TECHNOLOGICAL HANDBOOKS

THE CHEMISTRY OF THE COAL-TAR COLOURS

ROBERT E. ANGUS

FRANKLIN INSTITUTE LIBRARY

PHILADELPHIA

Class 667.2 Book B433 Accession 6215

those books intended for circulation.

ARTICLE VI.—The Secretary shall have authority to loan to members and to holders of second class stock, any work belonging to the SECOND CLASS, subject to the following regulations.

Section 1.—No individual shall be permitted to have more than *two books* out at one time, without a written permission, signed by at least two members of the Library Committee, nor shall a book be kept out more than TWO WEEKS; but if no one has applied for it, the former borrower may renew the loan. Should any person have applied for it the latter shall have the preference.

Section 2.—A FINE OF TEN CENTS PER WEEK shall be exacted for the detention of a book beyond the limited time; and if a book be not returned within three months it shall be deemed lost, and the borrower shall, in addition to his fines, forfeit its value.

Section 3.—Should any book be returned injured, the borrower shall pay for the injury, or replace the book, as the Library Committee may direct; and if one or more books, belonging to a set or sets, be lost, the borrower shall replace them or make full restitution.

ARTICLE VII.—Any person removing from the hall, without permission from the proper authorities, any book, newspaper or other property in charge of the Library Committee, shall be reported to the Committee, who may inflict any fine not exceeding twenty-five dollars.

ARTICLE VIII.—No member or holder of second class stock, whose annual contribution for the current year shall be unpaid or who is in arrears for fines, shall be entitled to the privileges of the Library or Reading Room.

ARTICLE IX.—If any member or holder of second class stock, shall refuse or neglect to comply with the foregoing rules, it shall be the duty of the Secretary to report him to the Committee on the Library.

ARTICLE X.—Any member or holder of second class stock, detected in mutilating the newspapers, pamphlets or books belonging to the Institute shall be deprived of his right of membership, and the name of the offender shall be made public.

THE CHEMISTRY

OF THE

COAL-TAR COLOURS.

TECHNOLOGICAL HANDBOOKS.

THE CHEMISTRY

OF THE

COAL-TAR COLOURS.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN OF

DR. R. BENEDIKT,

AND EDITED, WITH ADDITIONS, BY

E. KNECHT, PH.D.,

HEAD MASTER OF THE DYEING DEPARTMENT OF THE TECHNICAL COLLEGE, BRADFORD;
EDITOR OF THE "JOURNAL OF THE SOCIETY OF DYERS AND COLOURISTS."

LONDON: GEORGE BELL AND SONS, YORK STREET,
COVENT GARDEN.

1886.

CONS
TP
914
B413
1886

LONDON :
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

THE GETTY CENTER
LIBRARY

PREFACE.

Although England may rightly be called the birthplace of the coal-tar-colour industry, it is a remarkable fact that the English literature on the subject is very scanty, and that which does exist is now almost obsolete owing to the rapid strides which have been made during the last ten years in the manufacture of coal-tar colours.

Numerous elaborate works are published from year to year on this important subject both in France and in Germany, but more especially in the latter country, by means of which manufacturers and students are continuously kept informed of the latest methods and theories. The want of a text-book of this kind containing a concise account of all the more important coal-tar colours has long been felt by the author, and has prompted him to undertake the present translation of Dr. Benedikt's excellent little work, 'Die Künstlichen Farbstoffe,' which has met with such success in all parts of the Continent where German is spoken. The author may therefore not be considered too sanguine in hoping that the present volume will meet with some success in this country, not only as a stepping-stone for those who wish to make the subject a special study, but also among students of chemistry in general. It will also be found useful to those engaged in the dyeing and printing of textile fabrics.

The manufacture of coal-tar colours is an industry

6215

which cannot possibly thrive by the old "rule of thumb" way of doing business. It is a well-known fact that those who succeed best in this industry nowadays, spare no means to bring the highest scientific training to bear on the subject, while those who are "penny wise and pound foolish" endeavour to save the expense of adequate scientific advice, and thus ultimately find themselves completely surpassed by more enlightened rivals.

E. K.

BRADFORD,
January 1886.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

Introduction 1
The Optical Properties of Colouring Matters . . . 5
Absorption-spectra of the most perfect Colouring Matters 17
General Chemical Properties of the Colouring Matters . 26
Methods of Dissolving the Colouring Matters . . . 34
Dyeing with Coal-tar Colours 38
The Relations of the Fibres to Colouring Matters . . 43
The Testing of Colouring Matters 56
Coal-tar 64
The Coal-tar Colours 74
I. Aniline Dyes 75
(*a*) The Rosaniline Group 78
(*b*) Indulines and Safranines 117
(*c*) Aniline-black and Naphthameïn. . . . 125
(*d*) Colouring Matters containing Sulphur . . 132
II. Phenol Dye-stuffs 139
(*a*) Nitro-bodies 142
(*b*) Colouring Matters produced by the Action of Nitrous Acid on Phenols 154
(*c*) Rosolic Acids 156
(*d*) Phthaleïns 159
(*e*) Indophenoles 172
III. The Azo Dyes 174
(*a*) Amidoazo Dyes 178
(*b*) Amidoazosulphonic Acids 182
(*c*) Oxyazo Dyes 186
1. Amines and Amidosulphonic Acids . . 187
2. Phenoles and Phenol-sulphonic Acids . . 188
Derivatives of Quinoline. 205
IV. Artificial Indigo 207
V. The Anthracene Colouring Matters 212

Index 244

THE CHEMISTRY

OF THE

COAL-TAR COLOURS.

INTRODUCTION.

Until the middle of this century, the dyeing industry was dependent upon those colouring matters, which are either found as such in the vegetable and animal kingdom, or which are produced from some of the constituents of the latter by very simple chemical processes. This whole group of vegetable and animal colouring matters embraces all the so-called *natural* colouring matters, while those which the chemistry of modern times has evolved from organic bodies possessing a comparatively simple composition, by operations which cause a total change of the raw material, are generally designated as *artificial* colouring matters.

In the manufacture of these artificial colouring matters, but very few of the many organic substances consumed are obtained from the vegetable kingdom (e.g., tannin, which after its conversion into pyrogallol is used for the preparation of cæruleïn). The greater part of the materials which serve to furnish artificial colouring matters is obtained from coal-tar, a bye-product of the manufacture of coal-gas.

It is owing to this fact that the history of the manufacture of artificial colouring matters, or "coal-tar colours,"

is to a great extent intimately connected with the history of the manufacture of coal-gas, and there is no doubt that the general introduction of coal-gas for illuminating purposes within the first half of the present century, has made the manufacture of coal-tar colours possible. Nevertheless, from the 1st of April in 1814, when the parish of St. Margaret in Westminster was first illuminated by coal-gas, a period of no less than 42 years elapsed before the manufacture of the first aniline dye, mauveïne, was taken in hand.

During this long period the constituents of coal-tar were scientifically investigated, and thus a basis was formed on which the subsequent development of the coal-tar colour industry rested.

Great difficulties were encountered in the study of coal-tar, for 60 years ago, organic chemistry was only in its childhood, and only with the gradual development of this science to its present position has our knowledge of the constituents of coal-tar become perfected. On the other hand, the chemistry of to-day has been furthered to a great extent by a thorough and incessant study of this bye-product.

But even at the present time, our knowledge of the chemistry of coal-tar is by no means complete. We know that it consists of a mixture of a large number of compounds, about 50 of which have been obtained in the pure state; but we nevertheless suppose that it contains other compounds, which have hitherto not been isolated.

A short *résumé* of the dates of discovery of the most important constituents of coal-tar is given in the following.

Naphthalene was first discovered in tar in 1820 by *Garden*, *anthracene* in 1832 by *Dumas*, and *phenole* in 1834 by *Mitscherlich*. *Benzene* was discovered in 1825 by *Faraday*, but its presence in coal-tar was only recognised in 1845 by *A. W. Hofmann*. *Toluene* was discovered in 1837 by *Pelletier* and *Walter*, and in 1848 *Mansfield* showed that it was contained in coal-tar.

Aniline was first discovered in 1826 by *Unverdorben* in the products of the dry distillation of indigo, and in 1834 *Runge* proved it to be a constituent of coal-tar. The latter contains it, however, in such small quantities, that its isolation on a large scale would not pay. The production of aniline as a commercial product only became practicable when *Zinin* showed in 1842 that it could be produced by the reduction of *nitrobenzene*, a substance discovered in 1834 by *Mitscherlich*. *Béchamp* greatly improved this process in 1854 by the use of a mixture of iron and acetic acid as reducing agents. Within the last few years the method has been further improved by the introduction of hydrochloric acid instead of acetic acid.

Runge first noticed in 1834 that aniline, when brought in contact with chloride of lime, gave brilliant colours; but it was not until 1856 that *Perkin* prepared *mauveïne*, the first aniline dye, on a large scale.

In 1858 *A. W. Hofmann* published a work on the action of carbon tetrachloride on aniline, by which reaction he obtained aniline-red. It was in 1859 that *Verguin* first manufactured aniline-red (magenta) in quantity.

During the following five years, *violet*, *blue* and *green* colouring matters were invented and manufactured.

Aniline-black was discovered in 1863 by *Lightfoot*. *Graebe* and *Liebermann* effected in 1868 the synthesis of *alizarin*, the most valuable colouring principle of madder, a discovery which had the greatest influence on the whole colour industry.

The first *Eosin dye* was prepared in 1874 by *Baeyer*, while in latter years a large number of important dyestuff, such as the *scarlets*, *methylene-blue*, *malachite-green*, etc., have been prepared. Lastly, in the year 1880, Baeyer was so far advanced in his experiments on the preparation of artificial *indigo* that the "Badische Anilin und Sodafabrik" could venture to send into the market nitrophenylpropiolic acid, a product by means of which indigo can be produced on the fibre.

In going through the large number of artificial colouring matters which have been brought into the market since 1858, it will be seen that those products which are distinguished by superior brilliancy and fastness have soon taken the place of other colouring matters; to such an extent indeed, that the manufacture of many dyes, which at one time flourished, has either had to be relinquished altogether, or has at least been considerably reduced. And although it may seem to an outsider, while looking through a collection of our modern silk and satin materials, that the dazzling and pure shades obtained cannot be surpassed, those engaged in the manufacture of these dyes are nevertheless well aware, that even to-day they have not yet arrived at their ultimate aim. Of all the artificial dye-stuffs at present in use there are perhaps only a few, especially those which are distinguished by their superior fastness, that will maintain a permanent position in dyeing.

A popular prejudice still exists against the so-called "Aniline Dyes" as being far behind the animal and vegetable dye-stuffs with respect to fastness. But it is just those loose artificial colouring matters which are so soon replaced by other faster ones, and we now possess a considerable number of coal-tar colours which are just as fast, and often faster, than the natural ones.

PART I.

THE OPTICAL PROPERTIES OF COLOURING MATTERS.

The immense diversity of objects which surround us appear to our eye in an infinite variety of colours and shades. But the light which they reflect is, as will be shown further on, very seldom perfectly uniform, and is in most cases composed of a greater or lesser number of rays of light differently coloured. The study of optics affords us the means of finding out these different elements, i.e., of *analysing* the effect produced on our retina by any given colour.

The colour chemist can make use of the results obtained in this manner for the solution of many important questions, by the ordinary study of which he could gain little or no information.

The following will serve to illustrate a few questions of this kind :—

"What shades can be produced with a new colouring matter?"

"Can these shades be produced with other colouring matters, already known; or, cannot the shades obtained with the new colouring matter be obtained just as well with a mixture of two or more colouring matters, already known?"

"Do these shades possess the greatest purity and brilliancy that can be expected of a colouring matter, or may the colouring matter be surpassed by another of its kind, perhaps one that has still to be discovered?"

Primary colours.—However great the diversity of shades which we perceive, the number of primary impressions produced on the retina is very limited. These impressions are those of *white* and *black*, and of *red*, *yellow*, *green* and *blue*. The four last-named colours are termed *primary colours*, for no human eye has yet been able to detect in them two different colours, while all other colours contain two or more primary colours.

By mixing white, black, and the primary colours in different proportions, every impression is produced which the eye is capable of receiving. The number of impressions which can be produced by the mixture of these colours is, however, diminished by the fact, that the primary colours will not produce an impression in every combination of two. Thus the impression of red can be mixed with blue or yellow, but not with green; for although we know a bluish-red and a yellowish-red, we do not know a reddish-green. If red and green rays, or blue and yellow rays, enter our eye simultaneously, we have the impression of white. When two colours unite to form white, they are called *complementary colours*. Green would therefore be the complementary colour of red, blue that of yellow.

Since, therefore, it is not possible for us to distinguish in a colour red and green, or blue and yellow, the following colours may be produced without the assistance of white and black:—

Red—reddish-yellow—yellow—yellowish-green—green—greenish-blue—blue—bluish-red.

These colours are called *saturated* as long as they do not contain any *white*. The saturation is not diminished by an addition of *black*, but the *intensity* of the colours is diminished. The different gradations are called *shades*. Thus it is possible to produce any number of shades between blue and red, of which the first will contain a large proportion of blue with very little red, while the last contain a large proportion of red and very little

blue. The shades produced in this manner are known as bluish-violet, violet, reddish-violet, purple, and crimson.

All gradations or shades of grey lie between white and black. All the primary colours and their shades or mixtures can be mixed with white or any shade of the grey series, and thus an immense number of new colours would be produced which would represent the shades obtained with primary colours and shades.

Thus, by the construction of our eye and of our brain, we cannot distinguish, even in the most complicated colour, more than four elements, viz., two primary colours, white and black.

The marks or brands generally used in practice for distinguishing the shades of a colour may be mentioned here. For this purpose certain initials are placed after the name of the colouring matter, viz.: R for red (roth, rouge), O for orange, G or J for yellow (gelb, jaune), B for blue (blau, blue), and V for violet. Thus we have a Scarlet G and a Scarlet R, the redder shades being denoted by the terms Scarlet RR, Scarlet RRRR or 4R, etc. Ordinary aniline-blue possesses a red shade, and is known as Aniline-blue R, while the finest qualities are known as Aniline-blue 6B, etc.

Decomposition of light by the prism.

White light contains a number of different coloured rays, which are distinguished from each other by the length of their waves and number of oscillations. By means of the prism, it is possible to isolate these rays and to arrange them systematically according to their wave-lengths.

This can be demonstrated by the following simple experiment:—Direct or reflected sunlight is allowed to pass through a narrow slit *A* into a dark room. By means of the lense *L*, the light passing through the slit is

made to converge so as to form a distinct image on the screen *S S*.

If now the rays are intercepted by the prism *P*, the white image at *B* will disappear and a much broader image *R V*, consisting of coloured bands, will be formed on another part of the screen. White light contains therefore rays which are refracted from *B* to *V* (by the angle

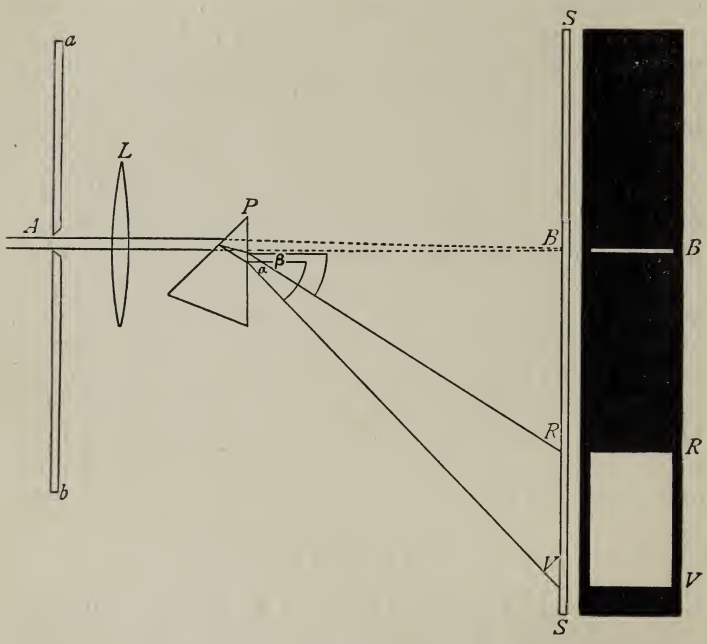


Fig. 1.

a), and those which are refracted least, to *R*, along with a number of intermediate ones. The rays which are refracted most, produce in the normal eye the impression of violet, and then the other rays follow, passing through bluish-violet to blue, bluish-green to green, greenish-yellow, yellow and orange to red. This coloured image is called a *spectrum*. The spectrum of white light contains all the

pure colours, with the exception of those lying between the red and the violet, viz., crimson, purple, etc.

Every point of the spectrum consists of *homogeneous* light; i.e., light which cannot be further decomposed. This can easily be proved by a slight modification of the previous experiment. A narrow slit A' is made, parallel to A in the screen $S\,S$, which can be adjusted so as to allow any portion of the spectrum to pass through. The light passing through the slit A is caused to pass through

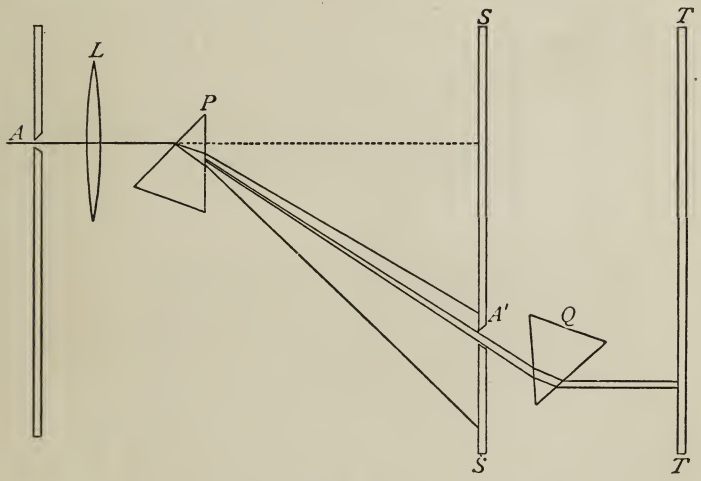


FIG. 2.

a second prism Q, and is cast on to a second screen $T\,T$. It will then be seen that the orange rays, for instance, cannot be resolved into red and yellow, as might have been expected; the new image remains orange.

The impression of orange can therefore be produced in our eye by homogeneous light of a certain refrangibility. But when a mixture of red and yellow rays (that is, of rays of greater and less refrangibility respectively than the orange rays) enters our eye, we have again the impression of orange.

The naked eye is not capable of discerning whether an orange is homogeneous or mixed, and it is furthermore, as already stated above, not able to analyse colours or to recognise the different coloured rays which produce a certain impression of colour. It is invariably necessary to make use of the prism or of some similar arrangement in order to obtain an exact idea of the different components of a colour. A convenient form of apparatus for this purpose

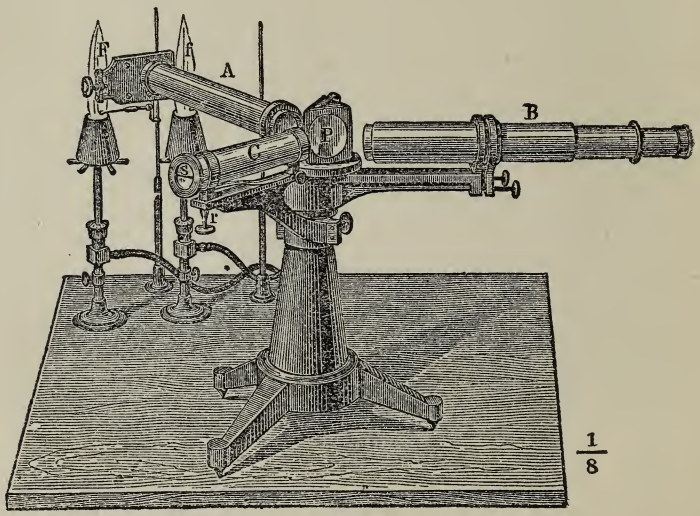


Fig. 3.

is the *spectroscope*, in which the spectrum produced by the prism is not thrown on to a screen but is seen directly.

One of the best forms of spectroscope is the one given in fig. 3. The light to be analysed enters the tube A through a slit, the width of which can be regulated by means of a screw. At the end of this tube there is a lens, which is constructed so that the slit lies in the focus, and the rays are thus caused to pass, parallel to each other, into the prism P. The tube B is an astronomical telescope,

through which an image of the spectrum can be seen. It can be turned around a vertical axis, and in this way every part of the spectrum can be brought into the middle of the plane of vision. The tube C also contains, at the end adjoining the prism, a lens, in the focus of which is placed a negative photographic image of a millimeter scale. This tube is placed so that its axis forms with the front face of the prism an angle equal to the one formed by the axis of the tube B, so that an eye looking through B sees simultaneously the illuminated scale and the spectrum, an arrangement which is of great advantage in the description and the comparison of the spectra.

Another form of spectroscope is known as the *spectroscope with direct vision.* This form consists of a single tube, containing, besides the slit and the lens, two or more prisms composed of Crown glass and Flint glass alternately.

The Spectra.

All solid or liquid bodies when heated to a white heat give a continuous spectrum; i.e., one which is not interrupted by any dark lines or bands.

The rays which are emitted from the white-hot substance of the sun have to pass, before reaching us, through the sun's atmosphere, and in consequence of this, the sun's spectrum is not a continuous one, but is traversed by a large number of fine lines, known as Frauenhofer's lines. Fig. 4 shows, according to Rood, the arrangement of the colours in the sun's spectrum and the relative positions of the most important of Frauenhofer's lines.

Incandescent gases or vapours, on the other hand, give *discontinuous* spectra, i.e., spectra in which the number of rays of light is limited, and they appear in the spectroscope only as lines of the breadth of the slit. These spectra are called *line-spectra*, and every chemical element possesses in the incandescent gaseous condition its own characteristic lines by means of which it can be recognised.

The simplest way of observing these spectra is to place the non-luminous flame of a Bunsen's burner in front of the slit of the spectroscope, and to introduce into it on the end of a platinum wire a volatile salt of the element to be examined.

These spectra are produced by *luminous* bodies. The colouring matters, their solutions and the substances dyed with them, are not luminous in themselves, but they possess the property of converting white light which strikes or traverses them into coloured light. The explanation of this is, that they reflect or are traversed by only a portion of the rays contained in white light, the rest being hidden or destroyed by absorption. If, for instance, a glass vessel containing a dilute solution of

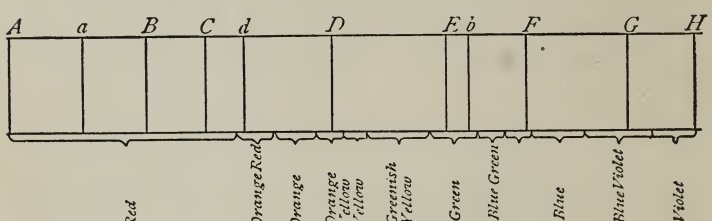


FIG. 4.

magenta is placed between a luminous flame, which gives a continuous spectrum, and the slit of a spectroscope, it will be seen on analysing the transmitted light that an essential change has taken place. Only the red rays of the spectrum pass through unchanged; the greenish-yellow ones are extinguished, and blue and violet are considerably weakened. The result is, therefore, a discontinuous *absorption-spectrum*, which consists of two parts, one containing a large number of red rays and the other the bluish-violet rays considerably diminished in intensity, while the two portions are separated from each other by a black interspace.

The light which strikes our eye from coloured surfaces is not simply reflected light; part of it has traversed the

uppermost layers of the coloured body, and being reflected in the interior has then entered our eye, partially deprived of its coloured rays. This coloured light is invariably mixed with a certain proportion of white light, reflected from the actual surface of the body before having entered the uppermost layer.

If, therefore, dyed fabrics are to be examined by spectrum analysis, the same phenomena are in general observed as the solutions of the corresponding colouring matters show when in a state of solution. In both cases, an *absorption-spectrum* is obtained; but the one given by the solution is the purer, because it does not contain the admixture of white light which is reflected from the surface of the coloured objects.

Absorption-spectra of organic colouring matters.

The graphic representation of an absorption spectrum may either be effected by shading the darkened parts

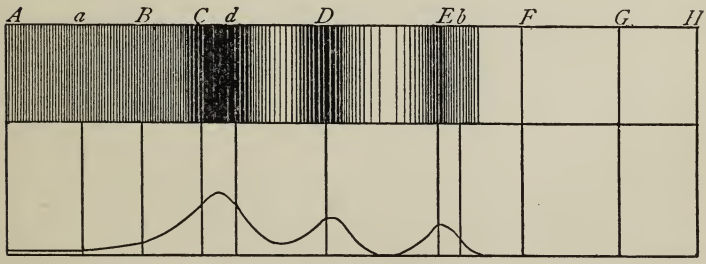


Fig. 5.

according to the degree of absorption, and leaving those parts white which allow the rays to pass unchanged; or by indicating the spectrum by a horizontal line and expressing the intensity of the absorption in each point by means of co-ordinates. Fig. 5 shows, for the purpose of illustration, the absorption-spectrum of blue cobalt-glass, represented according to each method. It will be seen

that cobalt-glass shows three bands of absorption, two of which verge into each other.

The lines marked *A*, *B*, *C*, *a*, *d*, etc., indicate certain prominent Frauenhofer's lines which are present in the sun's spectrum, and which serve to determine relatively the positions of the different bands of absorption.

The following absorption-spectra of solutions of four well-

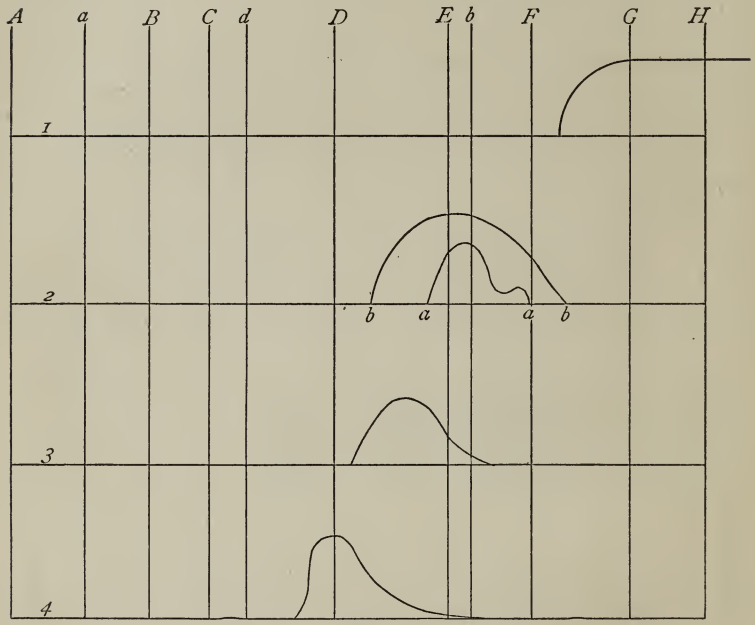


Fig. 6.

1. Picric acid. 2. Eosin; *a a*, dilute, *b b*, concentrated. 3. Magenta. 4. Methyl-violet.

known dye-stuffs—picric acid, eosin, magenta and methyl-violet (according to Vogel)—will serve as examples:—

Picric acid shows a total extinction of the blue side of the spectrum as far as $G\,\frac{2}{3}\,F$.*

* The expression $G\frac{2}{3}F$ serves to indicate that the spectrum is absorbed from the right end as far as $\frac{2}{3}$ of the space between *G* and *F*.

Eosin in concentrated alcoholic solution absorbs chiefly the green, while in dilute solution it shows a dark band from $D\ \frac{3}{4}\ E$ to *b*. The absorption continues nearly as far as F, where it terminates in an indistinct, narrow band.

Magenta is characterised by a very distinct band of absorption which, in dilute solutions, lies between *D* and E. In concentrated solutions it allows only the red rays to pass through.

By carefully considering the above examples, we arrive at the following deductions :—

The solutions of picric acid do not by any means possess the appearance of yellow because they allow only the yellow rays of the spectrum to pass through unabsorbed, but because they absorb those parts of the spectrum which are complementary to yellow, viz., the blue and the violet. The red, green and bluish-green rays are not absorbed any more than the yellow ones, but entering our eye they produce the impression of white. Thus the impression produced by picric acid is not a pure yellow, but consists of a yellow mixed with a considerable proportion of white.

In a similar manner, even concentrated solutions of the fine red eosin dye do not allow red light only to pass through; they only absorb that portion which lies between the yellowish-green and the pure blue, and allow part of the blue, the whole of the violet, red, orange and yellow, to pass through unchanged. The red colour of the eosin solution is therefore caused by a suppression of the green in the white, and not, as may have been supposed, by a special property of allowing only red rays to pass through.

The changes which the spectrum of a colouring matter undergoes when dissolved in different neutral solvents are generally very small. The colour lakes, however, and the solutions of the colouring matters in acids or alkalies give spectra which differ greatly from those of the colouring matters themselves.

Fig. 7 gives an example (according to Vogel) of the changes which the spectrum of alizarin undergoes when converted into different salts. (2 and 4.) A comparison of the spectra 2 and 3 shows the effect of different solvents in the absorption.

Influence of concentration.—If the solution of a colouring matter is diluted by degrees, it will be seen that the

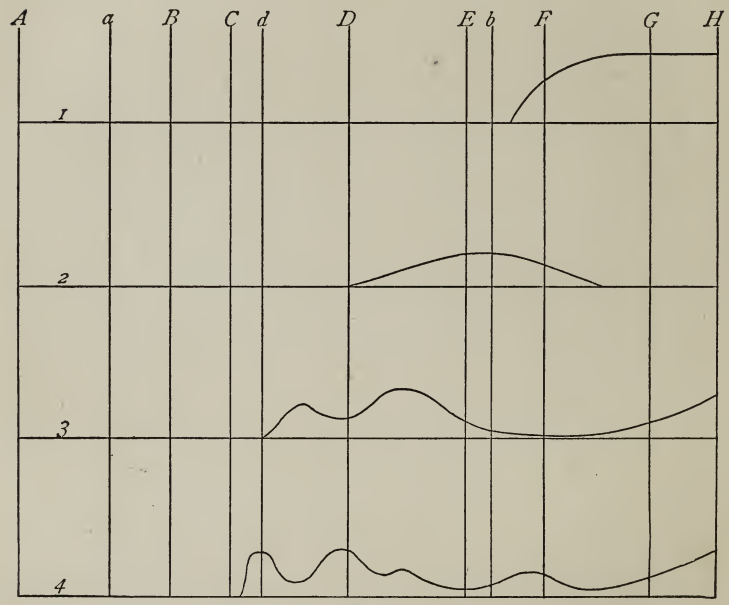


Fig. 7.

1. Alizarin in alcoholic solution. 2. The same with ammonia. 3. Alizarin in aqueous ammonia. 4. Alizarin in alcohol and caustic potash.

lines and bands of absorption gradually become less distinct, until at length in very great dilution they become altogether invisible. If, on the other hand, the quantity of colouring matter is increased, either by adding more to the solution or by causing the light to pass

through a deeper layer of the liquid, a point is ultimately arrived at, when the liquid appears to be opaque and the spectrum is completely absorbed. This shows that the solutions of the colouring matters are neither perfectly transparent nor perfectly opaque for any kind of light rays. Dilute and concentrated solutions of one and the same colouring matter do not give the same spectrum, since the concentrated solutions always absorb a greater proportion of the rays, while the unabsorbed rays are considerably diminished in intensity. (See the spectrum of eosin, p. 14.) It is therefore necessary, in giving an exact description of the absorption-spectrum of a colouring matter, to state the concentration of the solution and at the same time the depth of the layer through which the light has passed. A change in the spectrum is often accompanied by a change in the colour of the solution, which does not simply appear more saturated in a deeper layer, but has altogether changed colour. Chromic chloride offers a very striking example of this; in dilute solution it appears green, while in concentrated solution it is red.

Solutions like that of chromic chloride, which possess an essentially different colour in dilute and concentrated solution, are called *dichroistic*. A solution of methyl-violet, when acidified with hydrochloric acid, shows this property very distinctly.

In dyeing a series of shades with one and the same colouring matter, it is often seen that the light and the dark shades do not appear to have been produced with the same dye; the dark shades of a series of blues may, for instance, possess a distinct tint of red. This phenomenon is caused by a slight dichroism of the colouring matter used.

Absorption-spectra of the most perfect Colouring Matters.

In order to obtain a knowledge of the value of colouring matters by means of their absorption-spectra, it is first of

all necessary to know the nature of the absorption-spectra which the most perfect (purest) dyes give. Which rays, for instance, must a colouring matter absorb in order to impart to the material dyed with it the most brilliant yellow corresponding to the line *D* of the sun's spectrum? In order to decide this question, we will first study the impressions produced in our eye when two surfaces of equal size, the one white, the other coloured, are illuminated by lights of different colour.

If the white surface is illuminated by a sodium flame, i.e., a light which contains only those rays of the spectrum which correspond to the line *D*, it will have the appearance of yellow, and will reflect only homogeneous yellow light. If the second surface had been dyed with a colouring matter, the absorption-spectrum of which contained but one bright line at *D* (fig. 8) and were illuminated by white light (e.g., electric light), it would absorb all the rays with the exception of those corresponding to the line *D*, and would, like the first surface, reflect only homogeneous yellow light.

If now the illumination by the sodium light and the electric light, respectively, were regulated so as to cause the same quantity of yellow rays to fall on each surface, they would, although in reality equal in intensity, not appear the same in our eye. This is due to the fact that the sensibility of our eye for objects which emit or reflect a limited number of rays decreases proportionately with the intensity of the light which is reflected into our eye from the surrounding objects. It is, for instance, well known that a grey disc of paper appears much lighter on a black ground than on a white one.

In the sodium light, all the objects surrounding the white surface appear of a yellow colour, which varies in intensity; but the intensity never exceeds that of the white object, because the latter reflects the whole of the yellow rays which strike it.

The yellow surface illuminated with the electric light

absorbs, as we have seen before, all the rays with the exception of those corresponding to the line *D* of the spectrum. The surrounding white objects reflect the whole of the rays, while the coloured ones also reflect a considerable proportion, and they will therefore all appear in a much brighter light than the dyed object, which only reflects a small quantity of light, and is therefore called a dull or dead yellow.

We know from the preceding that brightly coloured objects reflect a number of different coloured rays which correspond to large portions of the spectrum, so that the reflected light contains a large proportion of the rays of light which strike it.

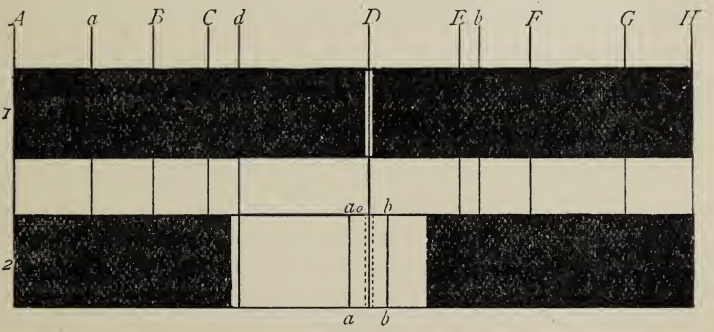


FIG. 8.

Adhering to our previous example, the most intense yellow will be produced in the following manner:—If the yellow space at *D* in the absorption-spectrum 1 (fig. 8) is gradually enlarged on each side until it reaches the lines *a a* and *b b* in 2, besides pure yellow, a yellow containing a small proportion of red along with a yellow with a greenish tinge are allowed to pass through. The small quantities of red and green combined produce the impression of white in our eye, and we obtain therefore by this enlargement of the spectrum a large addition of yellow, but at the same time a small admixture of white.

If now each side of the spectrum is gradually increased bit by bit, we shall find that the great increase of yellow obtained by the first enlargement gradually diminishes the more the ends of the spectrum deviate from the line *D*, while at the same time the green and red increase; i.e., the colour is mixed with more and more white.

If the spectrum is extended as far as the reddish-orange on the one side and a little further than the yellowish-green on the other, we only obtain a very small addition of yellow, whereas the white is considerably increased. A further enlargement of the spectrum would be of no use whatever, as the pure red and green would only combine to form white, and would thus depreciate the fulness of the yellow. The most brilliant yellow corresponding to the line *D* would therefore be produced by a colouring matter which allows all the rays lying between reddish-orange and greenish-yellow to pass through unchanged, but absorbs all the other colours of the spectrum, as indicated in 2, fig. 8.

In a like manner, it can be shown that the most intense *green* must allow all the rays lying between yellowish-green and bluish-green to pass through, but must absorb the yellow, blue, orange, red and violet.

The finest *red* would be given by a colouring matter which allows red and orange, as far as pure yellow, and the rays lying between bluish-violet and violet, to pass through, and possesses therefore a spectrum consisting of two parts.

The most perfect *blue* would allow the blue end of the spectrum, beginning with bluish-green, to pass through.

This deduction only holds good for the primary colours, red, yellow, green and blue, and must be somewhat modified if it is to be applied to intermediate shades. If, for instance, a colouring matter has to show an intense yellowish-green, corresponding to that part of the spectrum which lies half-way between green and yellow,

in the first place all the rays lying between pure yellow and green (from *m n* to *q r*) must pass through. The colour of the solution will then appear saturated in transmitted light, without any admixture of white. But the intensity of the colour can be considerably increased if the spectrum is enlarged on the one side as far as orange, on the other as far as blue. The colour adjoining the pure yellow is a yellow containing a very small proportion of red, while the colour adjoining the pure green is a green containing a very small proportion of blue. The small quantities of red and blue contained in the spaces *m n o p* and *q r s t* combine with the equally small quantities of green and yellow contained in the spaces *q r s t* and *m n o p* to form a small quantity of

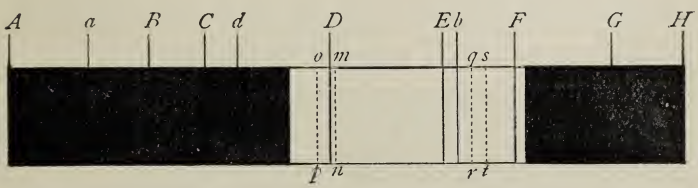


FIG. 9.

white; but there still remains a considerable proportion of green, which increases the intensity of the colour. If the spectrum is gradually enlarged on both sides, the yellowish-orange will first be neutralised by the greenish-blue to white, while the red combines in a similar manner with the green. The greenish-yellow is therefore not intensified by a further increase of the spectrum. Hence there is a limit to the perfection of a colouring matter. It would be useless to try to obtain colouring matters which impart shades to the dyed materials which correspond exactly to those of the spectrum, for if an object has to appear of a brilliant colour, it must always reflect some rays which combine to form in our eye the impression of white.

Mixtures of colouring matters.

When a new dye-stuff comes into the hands of a dyer, he generally tries by experimental dyeing whether it is available for the production of mixed shades; for the most practised eye cannot foretell what shade will be produced by mixing it with another colouring matter. Thus two blues which cannot be distinguished from each other in the pure state by the eye, may yield when used along with picric acid two shades which are as different from each other as green from olive.

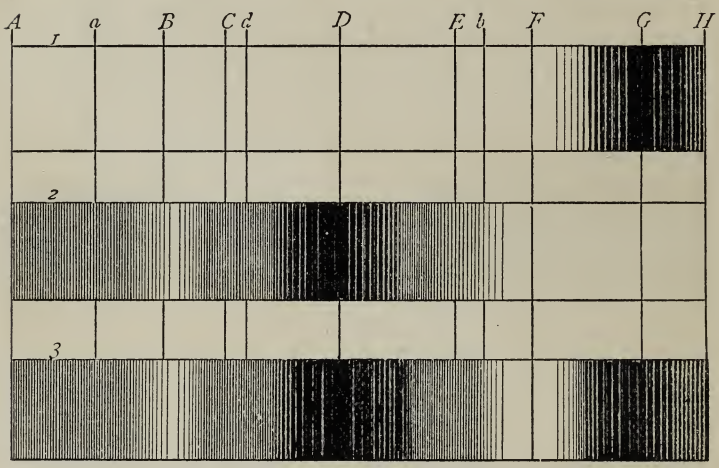


Fig. 10.

By an investigation of the green, for instance, which is formed by indigo extract and picric acid, we obtain in fig. 10 an illustration of those parts of the spectrum which are absorbed.

The solution of picric acid absorbs the violet and the greater part of the blue rays, so that only those rays which extend from the pure blue to the red end of the spectrum can enter the solution of indigo extract, which latter only allows the blue, bluish-green and part of the

red to pass through unaltered, while the orange and the yellow are almost completely absorbed, the green and yellowish-green partially. By combining these two spectra we obtain spectrum 3, which is characteristic for the green produced by means of indigo extract and picric acid. It consists of blue, bluish-green, green, and a portion of the red.

Indigo extract and picric acid do not, therefore, as may have been supposed, yield a green because one allows only blue rays, the other only yellow rays, to pass through, but because they both allow green light to pass through. This is shown a little more clearly in the following example:—The spectrum 1 in fig. 11 is that of

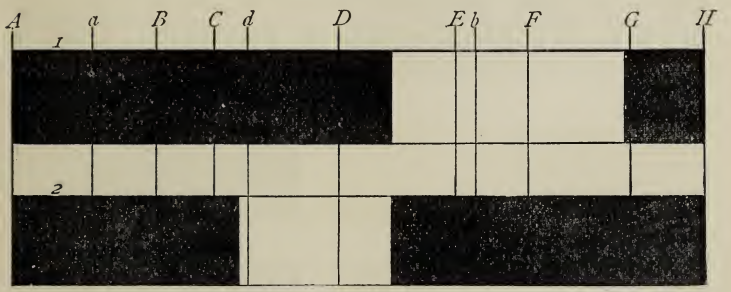


Fig. 11.

a pure blue colouring matter which would not yield a green with a pure yellow colouring matter possessing the absorption-spectrum 2, since all the rays would be absorbed and the result would be a *black*.

If the spectra of these two colouring matters are enlarged on each side, the single colours will not undergo any appreciable change, only receiving an admixture of a certain proportion of white.

Nevertheless, a very fair green is obtained by mixing the two, which is shown in spectrum 3, fig. 12.

A mixture of methyl-violet and Solid Green give a fine though not intense blue, the explanation of which is

similar to that of the formation of green by mixing blue and yellow.

Violet yields with the yellow colouring matters dull shades of green and yellowish-green, such as olives, moss-green, etc.

Of the more brilliant colouring matters there are probably no two which would fulfil the conditions expressed in fig. 11, and would thus obstruct all the rays. This result can however easily be arrived at by using three colouring matters, which must be as different from each other as possible. Thus the combination of a red, a yellow and a

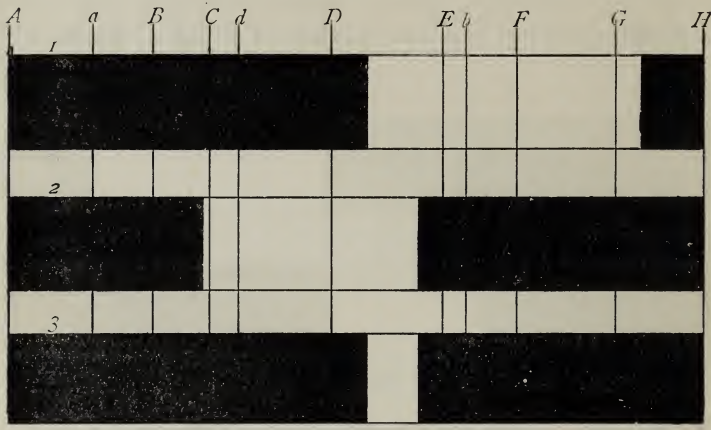


Fig. 12.

blue colouring matter, when sufficiently concentrated, does not under ordinary circumstances allow any light to pass through, and can therefore be used for the production of *blacks*. This property is in fact made use of in dyeing, and not only black, but also an unlimited number of dark or dull shades of red, yellow and blue, comprising the greys and browns, can be produced in this manner. Light or dark greys are produced when small quantities of colouring matter are employed, and the proportions are chosen so that none of the three colours is present in

excess. The colour inclines to brown, if red and yellow are in excess; while if the quantities of red and yellow are reduced, a bluish-grey is obtained.

Fluorescence.

The light which enters a coloured liquid is not in every case simply divided into two parts, of which one is absorbed, while the other passes through. Some solutions do not only appear coloured by transmitted light, but also in reflected light, in which case they appear to be rendered turbid by an extremely finely divided luminous solid in a state of suspension. Liquids which show this property are called *fluorescent.* A splendid example of fluorescence is shown, for instance, by an alcoholic, ammoniacal solution of Diazoresorufin. The liquid appears crimson by transmitted light, but in reflected light bright brick-red. Fluorescein, some of the Eosins, Magdala-red, and Resorcin-blue also show a marked fluorescence when in solution.

The fluorescent properties of a colouring matter are shown to the best advantage on those fibres which possess most lustre. Silk shows it best; wool will also show it under certain circumstances; but cotton cannot be made fluorescent, because the rough surface of the fibre disperses, and thus thoroughly mixes the transmitted light and the light of fluorescence.

The Spectroscope as a means of detecting colouring matters.

The absorption-spectra of the colouring matters can in some cases be made use of for their detection, especially when they contain characteristic lines of absorption, either in neutral, acid or alkaline solution. Thus, alizarin can be recognised by the bands shown in the spectroscope, by allowing the light to pass through its alkaline alcoholic solution. Reliable methods have indeed been devised

for detecting and distinguishing from each other certain colouring matters in this way, but the field has not yet been systematically worked. Colouring matters which are closely allied to each other in chemical constitution, and are therefore difficult to distinguish from each other by their chemical reactions, generally give very similar spectra; on the other hand, colouring matters which possess very different spectra may also be easily distinguished from each other by chemical means. Analysis by means of the absorption-spectrum, which has become of great importance for many branches of science and practice, is therefore only of minor importance to the colour chemist, and it is only in a few cases that it renders him important services.

GENERAL CHEMICAL PROPERTIES OF THE COLOURING MATTERS.

The term "colouring matter," in the strict sense of the word, embraces all those coloured substances which in a state of fine division are capable of imparting their own colour to other objects. In chemistry, however, the term is applied to other bodies, which of themselves possess little or no colour, but can be transformed into colouring matters proper by the action of bases or acids. The chemical denomination has indeed become so usual that it has in many cases almost completely replaced the former. Thus alizarin is called a colouring matter, although it possesses in the free state only a dull yellow colour, whereas the beautiful red combination of alizarin with alumina is generally known as a colour-lake and not as a colouring matter proper.

Chemical constitution.—This chapter will chiefly be devoted to those chemical properties of the colouring matters which are of importance in their application and especially in their fixation to the fibres, and since the terms "chemical

constitution" and "constitutional formula" will frequently be made use of in this and the following chapters, it may be well to give a thorough explanation of their meaning.

According to the chemical theory at present generally adopted, the smallest particles of the elements which can enter into chemical combination are called *atoms*. These atoms combine with each other according to definite laws in greater or smaller numbers to form *molecules*, which are simultaneously the smallest particles of matter capable of existing in the free state. Thus, each molecule of magenta is composed of atoms of carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen and chlorine.

The abridged chemical method of writing down the number of these atoms and the proportion in which they are contained in the molecule is called an *empirical formula*. Thus, the fact that the molecule of magenta consists of twenty atoms of carbon (C), twenty atoms of hydrogen (H), three atoms of nitrogen (N), and one atom of chlorine (Cl) is expressed by the empirical formula $C_{20}H_{20}N_3Cl$.

By a thorough investigation of the chemical properties of these bodies, their modes of formation, products of decomposition, and the compounds they are capable of forming, modern chemistry has procured a deeper insight into their interior structure. But although we have no definite idea as to the actual relative position of the atoms in the molecule, we are nevertheless enabled to lay down a scheme in which the atoms given by empirical formulæ are arranged in such a manner as to show the whole chemical nature of the compound. A scheme of this kind, which simply serves to express our knowledge of the compound to which it relates, is called a *constitutional formula*. The determination of the constitutional formulæ of bodies like the organic colouring matters, the composition of which is generally very complicated, is often a difficult matter, and it is therefore not to be wondered at that there are still many colouring matters the constitution of which is unknown.

In the constitutional formulæ, certain groups of elements invariably indicate similar chemical properties. Thus we know that bodies which contain one atom of nitrogen and two of hydrogen combined, as NH_2, all have the property of combining with acids. On the other hand, each individual chemical property is not a function of the arrangement of the total number of atoms, but only of certain groups of atoms.

In order to obtain a general idea of the chemical nature of the colouring matters, it will be found convenient to divide these groups of atoms into two classes, viz.: 1, those which cause the colour of the compound; and 2, those on which the acid or basic nature of the compound depends.

1. The groups which cause the colour of a compound are known as *chromophorous* or colour-bearing groups. They can often be discovered by carrying out certain reactions with the compound, and observing in which cases it loses its characteristic colour. It is then necessary to find out which groups have undergone a chemical change. If this has taken place with one group only, then that group is the chromophorous one; while if several groups have been affected, it is in most cases possible to detect the chromophorous group by a comparison of the results of several reactions.

Thus we know that the yellow colour of picric acid, $C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH$, is due to the presence of the three nitro groups (NO_2); because if this colouring matter is reduced by means of tin and hydrochloric acid, it is decolourised, and converted into triamidophenol, $C_6H_2(NH_2)_3OH$, in which the nitro groups of the original compound have been replaced by amido groups.

In a similar manner it has been ascertained that the chromophorous group contained in all the azo-colours, consists of two atoms of nitrogen, combined in the following manner: $-N=N-$. But although it may have been proved that a group of atoms has caused the colour of a certain compound, it must not be concluded that this group is

chromophorous in every case, and that therefore every compound that contains it must possess a similar colour. Generally this is the case with bodies of similar constitution, but although, for instance, most nitro-compounds are coloured yellow or orange, there are others which are colourless. The properties of the chromophorous group are of special interest to the dyer when he wishes to bring about a temporary or permanent decolouration of the colouring matter, such as is necessary in the preparation of "vats" or in the production of "discharges" (in calico-printing).

Salt-forming groups.—The groups of atoms which cause the colouring matters to form salts can also easily be recognised in the constitutional formulæ, and by a knowledge of them we can see at a glance their relation to the animal and vegetable fibres. For this purpose they may be suitably distinguished, according to their property of combining with acids or bases, or with neither, into *basic colouring matters*, *acid colouring matters*, and indifferent or *neutral colouring matters.*

The *basic colouring matters* are always used in dyeing in the form of their salts, i.e., of their compounds, with mineral or organic acids. Colouring matters possessing a distinct basic character, which lose their colour in coming in contact with acids, cannot be used in dyeing, as will be shown further on. The only exceptions to this rule are some very weak bases, which are absorbed by the fibre as such and not in the form of their salts. Amidoazobenzene, $C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_4\cdot NH_2$, a colouring matter which was formerly sold and used under the name of "Aniline-yellow," furnishes an example of this kind. Its salts are decomposed by water; if, therefore, silk is dyed with an acidulated solution of its hydrochloride, and is then washed with water, the free base only remains on the fibre. If, however, the silk undergoes a subsequent treatment with dilute acids (e.g., in brightening), the colouring matter evinces a neutral reaction and remains unchanged.

The free colour-bases are for the most part colourless or only slightly coloured.

All the known basic colouring matters contain nitrogen, and it is to the presence of these nitrogen atoms that they owe their basic properties. They are all derived from the type ammonia :—

$$\begin{matrix} \diagup H \\ N-H \\ \diagdown H \end{matrix}$$

By replacing one, two or all three of the hydrogen atoms in this compound by organic radicals, the *amines* or amido-compounds are formed. These are of three kinds. The *primary* amines contain two replaceable hydrogen atoms, the *secondary* amines one, while in the *tertiary* amines all the hydrogen atoms are replaced by organic radicals. The following may serve as examples :—

$\begin{matrix} \diagup CH_3 \\ N-H \\ \diagdown H \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} \diagup CH_3 \\ N-CH_3 \\ \diagdown H \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} \diagup CH_3 \\ N-CH_3 \\ \diagdown CH_3 \end{matrix}$
Methylamine. (Primary.)	Dimethylamine. (Secondary.)	Trimethylamine. (Tertiary.)

In place of methyl (CH_3) any other organic radical can be substituted; e.g., ethyl (C_2H_5), propyl (C_3H_7), benzyl (C_7H_7), etc.

In the amines, therefore, the nitrogen is always in direct combination with carbon and hydrogen or with three carbon atoms. The group NH which is contained in the secondary amines is known as the Imido group.*

The colour-bases may either contain one or several amido groups. Of two or more colour-bases possessing similar constitution, the one containing the largest number of amido groups will combine most easily with acids. The number of equivalents of an acid with which the base will combine is, however, limited according to the number of hydrogen atoms it contains in direct combination with the nitrogen atoms. Thus, rosaniline, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3$, contains

* NH_2 = Amido-Group.

three such hydrogen atoms, and it yields besides the salts containing one equivalent of acid, such as ordinary magenta, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3 \cdot HCl$, another series of salts, of which $C_{20}H_{19}N_3 \cdot 3\,HCl$ would be a representative.

The basic properties of the primary amines and also of the colouring matters containing primary amines, are much more marked than those of the secondary or tertiary amines. They are also considerably diminished by the introduction of electro-negative elements or groups, such as Chlorine, Bromine, Iodine or Nitro groups. Thus aniline, $NH_2C_6H_5$, which is a primary amine, is a strong base; diphenylamine, $NH(C_6H_5)_2$, which is a secondary amine, forms salts which are easily decomposed; while hexanitrodiphenylamine, $N(C_6H_2[NO_2]_3)_2H$, is no base at all, but, on the contrary, a strong acid. Its salts are known in commerce as Aurantia.

The salts of those colour-bases which contain unsubstituted amido groups are generally soluble in water, but if the hydrogen of these groups is partially or wholly replaced by organic radicals, the solubility decreases proportionately. Thus, magenta, which has the formula—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4NH_2 \\ C_6H_4NH_2 \\ C_6H_4NH \cdot HCl. \end{cases}$$

and contains two amido and one imido group, is comparatively easily soluble in water, whilst aniline-blue or the hydrochlorate of triphenylrosaniline—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4NH \cdot C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_4NH \cdot C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_4NC_6H_5 \cdot HCl. \end{cases}$$

is insoluble in water.

Most of the colour-bases can be transformed into soluble acid colouring matters by the action of sulphuric acid (*vide* Sulphonic Acids).

The *acid colouring matters* contain, like all acids, hydrogen atoms which can easily be replaced by metals; in other words, they possess the property of combining with bases to form salts with the simultaneous evolution of water. Thus, picric acid, $C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH$, contains a hydrogen atom which can be replaced by metals :—

$$C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH + KOH = H_2O + C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OK.$$
Picric acid. Caustic potash. Water. Picrate of potash.

As will be seen from the above example, not all the hydrogen atoms contained in an organic compound are replaceable by metals, but only those which are contained in certain groups, and it is to these that the compound owes its acid character. They present themselves in the form of the *hydroxyl* (OH) group or of the *sulpho* group (SO_3H); sometimes, also, as in aurantia, in the form of the imido group (NH), or as in the scarlet obtained from salicylic acid, in the form of the carboxyl group (COOH). All those colouring matters which owe their acid properties to the presence of hydroxyl groups are only weak acids. Thus the salts of fluorescein, $C_{20}H_{10}O_3(OH)_2$, are decomposed by acetic acid. Their acid properties are, however, considerably intensified by the introduction of chlorine, bromine, iodine, or nitro groups. It is well known that picric acid, $C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH$, is a much stronger acid than phenol, C_6H_5OH. Again, tetrabrom-fluorescein, or eosin, $C_{20}H_6Br_4O_3(OH)_2$, is a much stronger acid than fluorescein. The colouring matters of this group are either insoluble or only sparingly soluble in water. Alizarin dissolves in 3000 pts. of boiling water, picric acid in 86 pts. of water at 15° C. The substitution products containing Chlorine, Bromine, Iodine, etc., are still less soluble. Thus, whereas fluorescein can be dissolved in a large quantity of boiling water, eosin is completely insoluble.

On the other hand, most of these colouring matters are easily soluble in dilute alkaline solutions, or in other words, their alkali salts are soluble in water. The solu-

bility of these salts in water is in a direct ratio to the number of hydroxyl groups; but if the hydrogen of these groups is replaced by organic radicals such as methyl, ethyl, benzyl, etc., the compounds are again rendered less soluble or even insoluble in water. Thus, the ethyl ether of eosin, $C_{20}H_6Br_4O_3(OH)(OC_2H_5)$, yields a potassium salt which is insoluble in water.

Many of the colouring matters of this class yield insoluble compounds with the metallic hydrates, such as those of chromium, iron, aluminium, etc., which are known as *colour lakes* or simply as lakes.

Sulphonic Acids.—The sulphonic acids can either be derivatives of the basic or of the phenol colouring matters. They all contain one or more sulpho groups, and are characterised by their strongly acid properties. They can either be obtained by the action of sulphuric acid on the colouring matters themselves; e.g.—

$$\underset{\text{Spirit blue.}}{C_{38}H_{31}N_3} + H_2SO_4 = \underset{\text{Alkali blue.}}{C_{38}H_{30}N_3 \cdot SO_3H} + H_2O,$$

or by the direct transformation of the sulphonic acid into colouring matters:—

$$\underset{\text{Diazobenzene chloride.}}{C_6H_5 - N = N - Cl} + \underset{\text{Beta naphthol sulphonic acid.}}{C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}O\\SO_3H\end{cases}} =$$

$$C_6H_5 - N = N - \underset{\text{Tropacolin.}}{C_{10}H_5\begin{cases}OH\\SO_3H\end{cases}} + HCl.$$

The sulpho group is not chromophorous; it has so little influence on the colour of the compound that the original and the sulpho derivative are generally of exactly the same colour. The sulphonic acids are of great importance in practice, as they are generally soluble in water and can be dyed in acid baths. Colouring matters which are volatile in steaming, can be rendered non-volatile by transforming them into their sulphonic acids. The salts

of the dyes containing sulpho groups are much more soluble in water than those of the dyes containing only hydroxyl groups. They either possess a dull, indefinite colour (Alkali-blue, etc.), or they show their characteristic colour (Azo-dyes). In the first case, it is the free acid, in the latter a salt, generally an alkali salt, of the sulphonic acid which is absorbed by the fibre in dyeing.

Some colouring matters belonging to this class also yield lakes with metallic hydrates.

Neutral colouring matters.—Very few artificial colouring matters possess neither acid nor basic properties. As an example we may mention the artificial indigo, obtained from propiolic acid.

Methods of Dissolving the Colouring Matters.

The colouring matters are generally added to the dye-bath in a state of solution, sometimes also in the form of a paste, which latter does not contain the colouring matter in solution, but in a state of very fine division. As solvents, only those liquids which are miscible with water can be used for dyeing purposes; petroleum, benzene, etc., are therefore excluded. The most usual solvents are water, alcohol (methylated spirits), and acetic acid.

The water which is used for dissolving should be as pure as possible, especially with respect to lime salts, since the latter tend to precipitate part of the colouring matter. This evil can, however, be remedied by neutralising the water with a few drops of acetic acid.

The solutions are usually prepared hot, and are then either filtered or decanted in order to retain insoluble impurities, or particles of the dye which may not have been dissolved. If this operation is omitted, the goods are liable to become spotted or stained.

Many colouring matters dissolve easily in hot water, but are so sparingly soluble in cold water that they separate out again on cooling. It is advisable, in making

large quantities of such solutions for use, to add methylated spirits or acetic acid.

The term "soluble in spirit" implies at the same time that the colouring matter in question is insoluble in water. There are, however, many colouring matters which dissolve easily in both these solvents. The use of the colouring matters soluble in spirit is very limited, owing to the fact that their application is not only more expensive, but also more difficult than that of the colouring matters soluble in water.

The aqueous solutions of the coal-tar colours are often used as *coloured inks*, for the preparation of which 1 pt. of colouring matter is dissolved in about 50 pts. of water, with the addition of a little gum. "Aniline inks," which are made in pretty concentrated solution, show after drying on paper the characteristic metallic lustre of the colouring matter itself. Thus, marks produced with strong violet ink show a green reflex. Copying inks are produced by adding, besides gum, glycerine to the solution of the colouring matter. Important manuscripts or documents should not be written with these inks, as the colours gradually fade.

The methylated spirits used for dissolving should be as concentrated as possible, and at the same time free from impurities, especially such as aldehyde and acetone, which act very injuriously on certain dyes. It is well known that magenta, for instance, when treated with aldehyde is transformed into a fine blue colouring matter. The small quantity of aldehyde which might be contained in the methylated spirits would, however, suffice to convert the fine red shade of magenta into a violet. Other colouring matters, such as violet soluble in spirit, are similarly affected. This reaction can, on the other hand, be employed as a qualitative test for impurities in methylated spirits. In order to carry out the test, small quantities of magenta are dissolved in pure methylated spirits and in the methylated spirits to be tested. The two liquids are then brought to the same intensity of colour by dilution of one of them, and the shades are compared. If

the spirits in question are of exactly the same colour as the pure spirits, this is a sign that it contains no acetone or aldehyde; but if it is coloured violet, it is impure.

Open vessels should not be used for dissolving colouring matters in methylated spirits, on account of the loss which would be incurred by evaporation. The most useful form of vessel for this purpose is a small copper boiler, having a capacity of several litres, and provided with a lid which can be screwed down like that of a Papin's digester. The lid should be provided with a safety-valve. The boiler containing the colouring matter and the methylated spirits is placed in boiling water, when, taking into account that pure alcohol boils at 78·4° C., water at 100°, a considerable pressure will be formed in the interior. (For absolute alcohol the pressure would represent somewhat more than two atmospheres.) Solution is effected much more rapidly in this way than under the ordinary atmospheric pressure. After some time, the boiler is taken out, allowed to cool, and the clear liquid is decanted from any insoluble residue. Alcoholic solutions, prepared in this or other ways, should not allow the colouring matter to precipitate on being diluted with a small quantity of water, otherwise it would not be evenly divided throughout the dye-bath. Some colouring matters, e.g., blue insoluble in spirit, are of necessity precipitated, but in such a fine state of division that they are evenly assimilated by the fibre.

Colouring matters which require large quantities of methylated spirits for their solution are objectionable in many respects, and are therefore not much used in practice. For besides materially increasing the cost of dyeing, a large quantity of spirits is apt to coagulate* the "boiled-off liquor" and thus render it useless in dyeing.

If a colouring matter is only sparingly soluble in water and in strong methylated spirits, it is advisable to try whether it will not dissolve in a mixture of the two liquids. There are, in fact, colouring matters which dissolve much

* The sericine is precipitated. See p. 39.

more easily in a 50 per cent. solution of methylated spirits than in either water or spirits alone.

The alcoholic solutions of the coal-tar colours are used to some extent in the preparation of brightly coloured *varnishes*. These are prepared by dissolving different resins (shellac, copal, dammar, sandarac, etc.) in strong spirits of wine, and adding to the concentrated solution sufficient colouring matter to produce the required shade.

Acetic acid, $CH_3 \cdot COOH$, acts in many cases as an effective solvent for the artificial colouring matters.

Glycerine, $C_3H_5(OH)_3$, dissolves many of the coal-tar colours in large quantities, and is often used in the mixing of printer's colours. What makes it so valuable an agent in this respect is its property of simultaneously dissolving many other constituents of the printer's colours, especially albumen, gum, arsenic, etc. Glycerine is also sometimes used, on account of its viscosity, in the preparation of colour-pastes.

Solutions of *gum* and *glue* can also be used as solvents for many aniline dyes. The solutions may be prepared in the following manner:—

The solution of the colouring matter in alcohol or methylated spirits is added to a concentrated solution of gum-arabic, and the whole is well stirred. The colouring matter passes from the alcoholic solution into the gum, from which latter it is not precipitated by a subsequent dilution with water.

Another method is to dissolve glue in acetic acid at 10 to 12° Tw. and add to this solution the finely-pulverised dye. The mass is then well stirred and heated in a closed vessel, until a sample taken out and treated with water dissolves without any residue. The solution obtained in this manner can be allowed to solidify, in which state it can be kept for future use.

Very few of the coal-tar colours are soluble in *petroleum*, *benzene* and *ether*, but many organic liquids of higher

boiling-points, such as *nitrobenzene*, *aniline oil*, *fusel oil* and *carbolic acid*, act as eminent solvents.

In the *neutral oils* and *fats*, most of the aniline dyes are insoluble (methyl-violet is an exception). The basic colouring matters will, however, dissolve readily in *fatty acids*, or in oils containing fatty acids.

Fatty compounds of the aniline dyes can be prepared by adding the free bases to oleïc or stearic acid. These compounds are used for colouring oils, fats, oil-varnishes, etc. Another method of preparing fatty compounds of the basic colouring matters is to precipitate the solution of the dye with a solution of soap. Thus, magenta and soap would yield by double decomposition sodium chloride and a fatty compound of rosaniline.

Turkey-red oil is the ammonia or soda-soap of castor oil, and acts therefore as a solvent for aniline dyes.

For the preparation of coloured cosmetics or candles, special care should be taken in selecting colouring matters which are absolutely free from poisonous constituents.

Dyeing with Coal-Tar Colours.

Chemistry of the fibres.

Although the question as to whether the colouring matters enter into a chemical or a mechanical combination with the fibres still remains undecided, it is nevertheless certain that the relation of the colouring matters to the fibres does not only depend upon the physical structure of the latter, but also to a great extent on their chemical composition. It is therefore necessary to say something here on the chemistry of the fibres.

Of the numerous fibres used in the textile industries, three, viz. silk, wool and cotton, form the chief bulk, and it will suffice to give a description of these as representatives of the textile fibres in general.

Silk.—Silk does not consist of one homogeneous substance. It is possible, by means of the microscope alone, to discern two, sometimes three different layers, which differ from

each other chiefly in their chemical properties. In the natural state the silk fibre proper is enveloped in a coating (silk-gum), which in the case of yellow silk contains the colouring matter.

The chemical compound of which silk consists is known as fibroine, and is allied to keratine, the substance of horn, wool, hair, etc. The relative quantities of silk-gum and actual fibre contained in the raw silk vary considerably, according to origin, quality, etc.; but in practice, 18–27 per cent. of silk-gum and 73–82 per cent. of fibroine are generally calculated upon.

Neutral solvents have no action on fibroine. Prolonged heating with water, even under pressure, will not render it soluble. By caustic alkalies it is easily dissolved, and is attached by the same even in dilute solutions. Ammonia, however, as well as the carbonates and sulphites of the alkalies, and neutral soaps have very little action. Concentrated mineral acids, such as sulphuric acid, nitric acid and hydrochloric acid, dissolve the silk fibre. Chlorine, bromine and iodine deeply attack fibroine. Sulphurous acid has little or no action, and can therefore be used for bleaching silk.

The external covering of raw silk, which is also known as "silk-gum" or "silk-glue," can be removed by boiling the silk for several hours in water under pressure. The solution obtained in this manner solidifies on cooling to a gelatinous mass, which when evaporated to dryness yields a product closely allied to glue. The solutions of silk-glue are precipitated by alcohol; tannin substances also produce insoluble precipitates in them.

Both fibroine and sericine (silk-glue) consist of carbon, nitrogen, hydrogen and oxygen. They do not contain any sulphur. Raw silk leaves on combustion from 1 to 1·5 per cent. of ash, consisting chiefly of carbonate of lime. The percentage of ash is often considerably increased by the use of hard water in softening the cocoons, and is in many cases the cause of unfavourable results in dyeing, since insoluble

lime lakes are formed, thus rendering the shade of the material "cloudy." The injurious effect of lime in the fibre is most prominent when the oxalates of the colouring matters are use in dyeing, owing to the fact that insoluble oxalate of lime is formed in the fibre, and thus prevents the dye being absorbed evenly. Most of the lime can, however, be got rid of by treating the silk, previous to dyeing, with dilute lukewarm hydrochloric acid.

Silk is very seldom dyed as raw silk; in the majority of cases it is first "discharged," or deprived to a greater or less extent of its external covering, the silk-glue. By this means it becomes more glossy, and a better feel is imparted to it, while at the same time it loses in weight.

The *stripping* or discharging of silk is effected by boiling the raw silk in strong soap solutions. On the large scale this is generally carried out in two operations. In the first soap-bath, the temperature of which is not quite 100° C., the hanks of silk are worked until the silk-glue swells up and falls from the fibre.

In the next operation it is sewn up in linen bags and boiled in a fresh soap-bath, until it has acquired its proper feel and handle.

This second bath can be used again for ungumming a fresh portion of silk, and is used lastly in the form of *boiled-off liquor* as an addition to the dye-bath (in silk dyeing).

The loss in weight in these two operations varies from 18 to 27 per cent. It is sometimes desirable to transform raw silk into a glossy and "scroop" product without involving such a considerable loss in weight. This is done by treating the silk with water containing tartar and some sulphuric acid, heated nearly to the boil. By this method the silk is only partially discharged, and the loss in weight is only from 4 to 8 per cent. The product is known as *souple*, and lies, with respect to its properties, between raw and discharged silk.

It follows from this that raw silk, souple and discharged

silk, must be acted upon differently by chemical agents, and must therefore not all be treated in a like manner. Thus, boiled-off silk, which consists of almost pure fibroine, can be dyed in very hot acidulated or slightly alkaline baths; while raw silk and souple will not stand this treatment, on account of the silk-glue they contain.

Wool.—Wool is never dyed in the raw state, i.e., as it comes from the sheep's back, but is always previously washed and scoured. By these operations the "suint" or "yolk" (a substance consisting of grease, the alkali salts of certain organic acids, earthly impurities, etc.) is removed, thus leaving behind almost pure wool. Wool consists of a substance chemically known as keratine, an albuminoid body, which is also the chief constituent of hair, horn, feathers, etc. It contains besides carbon, nitrogen, hydrogen and oxygen, a certain percentage of sulphur, which makes it differ considerably from silk in its properties.

Wool is completely dissolved by hot solutions of caustic alkalies. It is not much affected by dilute acids, but concentrated mineral acids as well as chlorine deeply attack the fibre. Hence the latter cannot be made use of for bleaching wool. It should be borne in mind that the sulphurous acid which is used almost exclusively in the bleaching of wool adheres to the fibre very tenaciously after the operation is over. After stoving, the material should first be rinsed in a weak solution of soda and then thoroughly washed with water. If this latter operation is omitted, and the material is subsequently dyed with an aniline dye, the sulphurous acid retained by the fibre may gradually reduce and decolourise the colouring matter. This is sometimes seen very distinctly in certain fabrics in the places where dyed and bleached yarns cross each other.

Cotton.—Clean and well-bleached cotton consists, like all other perfectly bleached vegetable fibres, of almost pure cellulose. Cellulose consists of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen in the proportions expressed by the formula

$(C_6H_{10}O_5)n$. The only portion of the cotton fibre which does not consist of cellulose is the extremely thin membrane or cuticle which envelopes it, and to which it owes its tenacity in a great measure. The chemical composition of this cuticle is not known. If it is destroyed, the fibre falls to a powder. Cotton is dissolved by concentrated sulphuric acid; nitric acid converts it into gun-cotton; while hydrochloric acid disintegrates the fibre. Caustic alkalies and dilute solutions of bleaching powder have very little action on the cotton fibre.

For the dyer, the most important chemical properties of the fibres are those which bear directly on the colouring matters themselves, or on the additions made to the dye-bath. In dyeing, it is not only necessary to see that the colours produced on the different materials are as full and as fast as possible, but also that the fibre should not lose in strength, and in the case of wool or silk that it should not part with any of its lustre or pliability. After dyeing, wool should still feel soft, and not harsh or "hask;" while silk should retain its peculiar feel, and when compressed or twisted strongly, should emit a peculiar crackling sound.

From these short notes on the chemistry of the fibres, it will be seen that strongly acid or alkaline baths cannot be used indiscriminately for any kind of fibre without sometimes incurring considerable injury, and it is therefore advisable to observe the following rules in dyeing.

Action of acids and alkalies on the fibres.—Wool and silk will stand the action of dilute acids without injury, and as long as concentrated mineral acids are not made use of, it is not to be feared that the fibres will undergo any change when dyed in acid baths. Indeed, silk only acquires its peculiar crackling or "scroop" feel after a treatment with an acid; after being dyed and washed, it is therefore almost invariably passed through a weak acid bath, an operation known as developing (brightening). Acetic, tartaric or citric acids are generally used for this purpose;

but it is preferable to use one of the latter two, as the acetic acid absorbed by the fibre gradually evaporates, and the silk then loses its peculiar feel.

Hot solutions of mineral acids, even when very dilute, have an injurious effect on *cotton* and other vegetable fibres; they weaken or "tender" the material. If it is necessary to dye cotton in an acid bath, the material should be thoroughly washed subsequently, for if a mineral acid, even if very dilute, is allowed to dry on the fibre, the latter will be gradually destroyed.

The *animal fibres* are very easily attacked by caustic and even by carbonated alkalies. An 8 per cent. solution of caustic soda will dissolve them completely. Dilute soda solutions, which are sometimes used for discharging certain kinds of silk, have a destructive action on the fibre if allowed to lie in contact with it for a length of time. The use of baths which contain either caustic or carbonated alkalies should therefore be avoided as much as possible in the dyeing of wool or silk.

On the other hand, the alkalies have not an injurious effect on cotton. Even concentrated solutions of the caustic alkalies do not tender the fibre, but only cause it to contract and become more dense (mercerised cotton).

The Relations of the Fibres to Colouring Matters.

Taking exception to artificial indigo, aniline-black, and one or two other colouring matters, the coal-tar colours can be divided into two classes with respect to their relation to the fibres:—

1. The colouring matter is absorbed directly from its solution by the fibre. In this case the fibre is said to be *substantively* dyed, and the colouring matter is called a *substantive* colouring matter.

2. The fibre does not combine directly with the colouring matter, and must first be charged with metallic salts or hydrates (*mordanted*), or prepared in some other way

before it will receive the colour. These are known as *adjective* colouring matters.

Substantive dyeing.—The animal fibres possess great affinity for most of the coal-tar colours, and in many cases they absorb them so completely that the liquid is rendered colourless. Many colouring matters are taken up by wool and silk from an acid bath much more readily than from a neutral bath. The bath is rendered acid (soured) by the addition of acetic acid, tartaric acid or sulphuric acid. When sulphuric acid is used, Glauber's salts (sodium sulphate) are usually added simultaneously, and the two combine to form sodium bisulphate, which has less action on the fibre than free sulphuric acid. Some dyers prefer to add the sodium bisulphate as such, instead of forming it in the dye-bath. In this case, care should be taken to see that the commercial product is free from nitric acid, which has a very injurious action on many colouring matters. In wool-dyeing, sodium sulphate or magnesium sulphate are frequently added to the dye-bath, in order to reduce the solubility of the colouring matter, and thus to obtain more even and faster colours.

Silk absorbs many colouring matters so rapidly that the colour produced is uneven or "cloudy." In order to prevent this, silk is usually dyed in a weak soap-bath. Neutral or alkaline soap-baths are made up with Marseilles or good olive-oil soap; while for acid soap-baths, boiled-off liquor is used, along with acetic or sulphuric acid.

Cotton evinces very little affinity for the coal-tar colours; it can only be dyed directly in one or two instances, and the colours produced in this way are not at all fast. Gun-cotton, collodion and vegetable parchment, on the other hand, possess considerable affinity for the coal-tar colours.

It is at present almost generally admitted that the combinations of the substantive colouring matters with the fibres are of a chemical nature. In certain cases, however, it is difficult to conceive that a chemical combination takes place, and in these it seems more rational

to ascribe the dyeing to a mechanical adhesion or attraction than to a chemical reaction. Thus, alkali-blue, which is the sodium salt of the mono-sulphonic acid of aniline-blue, is absorbed from its neutral, colourless solution by wool or silk; but the actual colour, the free sulphonic acid, is only produced by a subsequent development in an acid bath. In this case, taking the chemical theory as the correct one, a chemical combination must have taken place between the fibre and the colourless sodium salt, a reaction which it is not easy to conceive from a chemical point of view. Another striking example is furnished by the *indigo vat.* If cotton is immersed for some time in an indigo vat, it will withdraw from the vat a much larger proportion of indigo-white than would correspond to the amount of liquid absorbed. A precipitation has therefore taken place in or on the fibre, but at the same time it cannot be supposed that a chemical combination has taken place between the indigo-white and a totally neutral and indifferent substance like cotton.

The substantive colours when dyed on the fibre possess, as a rule, the same colour as their solution in transmitted light. The adjective colours are, on the other hand, apt to vary considerably in shade, according to the mordant or other substances used in preparing the material. In silk or wool-dyeing, these variations in shades are sometimes brought about by first mordanting the material with a substantive colouring matter, and then dyeing with an adjective one.

Another method of fixing the substantive colouring matters is often resorted to in the printing of silk fabrics. The pieces are first charged with stannic oxide or alumina, by passing them through dilute solutions of stannate of soda or basic aluminium sulphate, after which they are dyed and steamed. The colours obtained in this way are much brighter than those obtained on material which has not been previously prepared. If, however, the silk is charged with a large amount of tin, the light shades are

apt to be spoiled. This is the case with silk which has been weighted by being immersed repeatedly in a concentrated solution of stannic chloride and then washed in running water.*

Adjective dyeing.—There are only a few of the coal-tar colours which possess any affinity for cotton, and the shades obtained with them are not permanent. Before dyeing, cotton must therefore be mordanted; i.e., it must be charged with some substance or substances which cause it to take up the colour. The mordants which are used for the aniline dyes can be divided into two classes.

One of these yields insoluble compounds with the colouring matters which are precipitated on the fibre in definite quantities corresponding to chemical equations; as an instance of this class we may mention the metallic hydrates which are used as mordants.

The other class of mordants does not yield definite chemical compounds with the colouring matters, and simply absorbs the dye substantively. Thus albumen belongs to this class, as well as a large number of other substances which are chemically quite indifferent to the colouring matters, and only assimilate them on account of their physical structure, just as animal charcoal acts on coloured solutions. Many finely-divided precipitates, such as calcium phosphate, carbonate of lime, silicic acid, starch, etc., produced on the fibre, possess this property.

Metallic hydrates.—The principal mordants belonging to this category are salts of lead, tin, chromium, iron and alumina. They are used chiefly for the fixation of the acid colouring matters, such as eosin, cæruleïn, alizarin, etc., with which they yield insoluble salts or lakes. These mordants are generally used in dyeing in the shape of soluble salts, such as lead acetate, stannic chloride, ferrous acetate, aluminium acetate, etc.

The usual process of mordanting cotton yarn with mordants like lead or alumina, may be explained in the

* Silk is sometimes weighted as much as 25 per cent. in this manner.

following manner:—If soda is added to a solution of lead acetate or aluminium sulphate in small quantities at a time, it will be noticed that these additions can be continued for some time without the appearance of a precipitate, soluble basic salts of lead, or alumina, being formed.

If cotton yarn is now immersed into a solution prepared in this manner, these basic salts are decomposed even in the cold, but much more rapidly on the application of heat, into more basic, insoluble ones, which are fixed by the fibre while at the same time acid salts are formed which remain in solution. The fibre possesses, therefore, an affinity for the mordant, which is most likely due to a dialytic action of the former.

The complete fixation of the mordants is effected by passing the material after mordanting through dilute solutions of soap, soda, or chalk, or by washing in calcareous water.

The affinity of the woollen fibre for mordants is much greater than that of cotton. For if wool is heated in a solution of alum, the assimilation of basic salts of alumina begins at once; but the solution is soon rendered so acid by the sulphuric acid liberated, that the fibre cannot take up any more of the mordant. On this account it is usual to add some tartar to the solution of the mordant, when in place of sulphuric acid the weaker tartaric acid will be liberated, which has no injurious action.

As a rule, mixed mordants yield more stable colours than single ones, and experience has shown that it is most advantageous to use a sesqui-oxide (ferric oxide, chromic oxide, alumina) along with a monoxide (lime, magnesia, stannous hydrate, zinc hydrate). The double colour-lakes subsequently produced in dyeing are characterised by their fastness to acids and alkalies; an admixture of magnesia makes the alumina-lakes fast to alkalies.

The application of these mordants in printing will be referred to again under alizarin.

Sulphur.—The insoluble modification of sulphur has no affinity whatever to the colouring matters, but the amorphous modification has a very peculiar action. If wool is impregnated with a solution of sodium hyposulphite (sodium thiosulphate) and is then passed through a dilute mineral acid, such as sulphuric acid, amorphous sulphur is precipitated on the fibre, according to the following equation:—

$$Na_2S_2O_3 + H_2SO_4 = Na_2SO_4 + H_2O + SO_2 + S.$$

The fibre is thus rendered capable of absorbing certain colouring matters much better than before this treatment. This is especially the case with methyl-green, with which it is difficult to obtain bright and even colours on unmordanted wool. Aniline-brown, eosin and safranine are also said to give much brighter shades on wool mordanted with sulphur.

Metallic sulphides.—The sulphides of zinc and tin precipitated on the cotton fibre by double decomposition, render the latter capable of being dyed with magenta, methyl-violet and Bismarck-brown. Very full shades can be obtained in this manner, which are at the same time pretty fast to washing. Aniline-blue and safranine do not give satisfactory results by this process.

Silica. — Finely-divided or gelatinous silica readily absorbs the aniline dyes. Although it has not yet been positively proved, it is nevertheless probable that the combinations obtained in this manner are not of a chemical nature, but purely mechanical, and are due to the structure of the finely-divided silica. This property of silica is sometimes made use of in dyeing with alkali-blue. Soluble glass is added to the dye-bath when, in the subsequent development with acid, hydrated silica is separated out on the fibre, thus rendering the colour both faster and fuller.

Double cyanides.—The insoluble salts of hydroferrocyanic and hydroferricyanic acids possess an eminent affinity for the basic aniline dyes. Thus, cotton first passed through

a solution of ferrocyanide or ferricyanide of potash, and then through zinc sulphate, can be dyed with magenta, methyl-violet, methylene-blue, etc.

Oil mordants.—Several methods of dyeing cotton are based on the relations of the colour-bases to the fatty acids and soaps described on p. 38, all of which effect in one way or another the formation of the insoluble fatty acid compounds on the fibre. Acid colouring matters like the eosines and the azo dyes can also be fixed on the vegetable fibres previously prepared with fatty acids, the latter being dyed substantively.

One of the most usual oil mordants is the so-called *Turkey-red Oil*, which is prepared by adding castor oil or olive oil very gradually to concentrated sulphuric acid (D. O. V.), care being taken to avoid any rise in temperature. The liquid is then neutralised with soda-ash, and ammonia is added until a sample dissolves completely in water. The whole is then allowed to stand for about twelve hours in order to allow the sodium sulphate to crystallise out, when the clear oil is decanted.

The oil mordants are seldom used alone, but generally along with inorganic mordants, which cause them to combine more intimately with the fibre, while at the same time the colour becomes much faster. As an example of the use of oil mordants in dyeing, the following process, used in the manufacture of *half silk fabrics*, may be described here.

Cheap fabrics consisting of silk and cotton are dyed in the piece, because the silk used in their manufacture is of so poor a quality that it will not stand being discharged in the yarn. It is therefore necessary to prepare the cotton before weaving in such a manner, as to render it capable of absorbing the dye in exactly the same proportion as the silk does. For this purpose the cotton yarn is first impregnated with Turkey-red oil and then "aged," i.e., exposed for some time to the action of air and light, by which latter process the fatty acids are liberated

and undergo a peculiar partial oxidation, which renders them insoluble in weak soda solutions. The yarn is then passed through a bath of neutralised alum. After having been prepared in this manner, it is made up into fabrics with the raw silk, which is discharged in the piece, and the fabric is finally dyed with magenta, eosin, aniline-blue, scarlet, etc. Another way of making up this kind of goods is first to weave the material, then discharge mordant, oil, and steam, in order to fix the oil, pass through weak soda solution (to remove the surplus of oil), and dye.

Oil mordants are also used for colouring matters which can be fixed with inorganic mordants alone, e.g., for cæruleïn and alizarin; the shades obtained are much faster and more brilliant than those obtained without the use of oil mordants.

In yarn dying, it is not always necessary to make use of Turkey-red oil as an oil mordant. A very good substitute can be prepared by gradually mixing 1 kilo. of olive oil with 50 c.c. of concentrated sulphuric acid. The milky liquid thus obtained is added to the lukewarm bath, in which the yarns are handled until they are sufficiently impregnated. They are then wrung and transferred to the dye-bath, which contains, besides the dye, a small quantity of alum and soda.

Soap has also been proposed as a mordant for the aniline dyes. The cotton is first passed through a soap solution, dried and dyed without being previously washed. By the double decomposition of the soap and the colouring matter, insoluble compounds of the fatty acids and colour-bases are formed on the fibre. The colours obtained by this method are not stable.

Sometimes fatty acids are introduced into the colouring matters after the latter have been fixed on the fibres by inorganic mordants, in order to produce brighter and faster colours. This is effected by passing the goods, after dyeing, through a boiling soap solution, or by oiling them with Turkey-red oil, or by other similar methods.

The important part which the oil mordants play in *alizarin-dyeing* will be referred to further on under that heading.

Tannin mordants (astringents).—Tannic acid will combine with the basic aniline dyes, to form either soluble compounds or insoluble lakes, according to the proportions of tannic acid and colouring matter used.

According to the experiments of Juste Koechlin, insoluble lakes are obtained when the following proportions are made use of:—

4 pts. Magenta	5 pts. tannic acid	2 pts. soda crystals.
4 „ Malachite-green	5 „ „ „	1 „ „ „
4 „ Parma	5 „ „ „	1 „ „ „
4 „ Methyl-green	10 „ „ „	4 „ „ „

If cotton is steeped for some time in a solution of tannic acid, it will absorb a certain proportion of the latter, and is thus rendered capable of fixing the basic aniline dyes. The affinity of cotton for tannin is not, however, a very strong one, since by long-continued washing the latter can all be removed again from the fibre. Cotton is seldom mordanted with tannin alone, since the colours obtained in this way are not stable. The tannin is usually fixed on the fibre in an insoluble form, by passing it after the tannin bath through a solution of some metallic salt or other substance capable of yielding an insoluble compound with tannin (e.g., gelatine).

Tartar emetic and stannic chloride (tin spirits) are most generally used for this purpose, but in many cases it is more advantageous to use other metallic salts, such as ferrous acetate, ferric sulphate, zinc acetate, neutralised alum, lead acetate, etc. In working on the large scale, it is first necessary to find out experimentally the most suitable proportions between the tannic acid and the metallic mordant. Thus, it has been found that 5 pts. of tannic acid require for their complete precipitation 1 pt. of tartar emetic and 1 pt. of soda crystals.

The choice of the inorganic mordant to be used along

with the tannin depends on the nature of the colouring matter, and on the shade required, since one and the same colouring matter can give very different shades with different mordants. In dyeing cotton prepared in this manner, a treble compound or lake is obtained, consisting of tannin, metallic oxide and colouring matter.

The compounds of tannic acid with the aniline dyes are soluble in methylated spirits and in acetic acid. If the solutions obtained in this way are thickened with starch, gum, etc., and then printed on mordanted fabrics, insoluble compounds of colouring matter, tannin and mordant are obtained on the fibre in the subsequent operation of steaming. This process is used largely in calico-printing.

Weighting of silk with tannin.—The coal-tar colours seldom lose any of their brilliancy in being combined with tannin substances, providing the latter are not coloured in themselves. It is thus possible to weight silks dyed in bright colours, in all but very light shades, from 12 to 15 per cent., by steeping them for some time in cold solutions of pure tannin. The silk combines directly with the tannin, and though materially increased in weight, it does not part with any of its valuable properties by this treatment.

Albuminous and gelatinous substances.—The coal-tar colours behave similarly with substances like albumen and gelatine as they do with silk and wool, which are indeed chemically closely allied to the former. Vegetable fibres which have been "animalised," i.e., coated with a thin layer of some albuminous substance, can therefore be dyed like wool or silk.

This property of the coal-tar colours is very seldom made use of in dyeing, but it is used on a large scale in calico-printing. For this purpose a concentrated solution of *egg albumen*, or, for dark shades, *blood albumen*, is mixed with the colouring matter, printed and steamed. In this way the albumen is coagulated, and remains behind on the fibre as an adhesive coloured coating. In place of albumen,

an ammoniacal solution of *casein*, or alkaline, or slightly acid solutions of gluten can be used, but the results obtained are not so good.

Solutions of glue containing the aniline dyes, along with a small percentage of bichromate of potash, can also be used for printer's colours. The printed fabric is exposed to the action of the light, which renders the glue insoluble.

Colouring matters as mordants.—In some cases, the colouring matters themselves which have been fixed on the fibre can act as mordants. Thus, aniline-violet, which of itself has very little affinity for the cotton fibre, can be dyed very well on fast violet (ferric alizarate).

The fact that colours obtained with two substantive colouring matters are often much faster than either colouring matter by itself, is most likely also due to a similar cause.

Fast and loose colours.

The fastness of colours produced on the fibre not only depends on the stability of the colouring matter itself against external influences, but also on the stability of the combination between fibre and colouring matter. Thus a very fast colouring matter, such as Guignet's green, may be combined with the fibre in so loose a manner (by means of albumen) that it falls off in a powder in washing or wearing, without undergoing any material change itself.

A material is usually called fast-dyed, if it will withstand every action to which it is likely to be exposed in the course of the use for which it was intended. Cotton fabrics, for example, ought to stand the process of washing much better than silk, since the latter is generally cleansed in quite a different way; while the Turkish fez, which is exposed all day to the action of the sun's rays on the head of the dockyard workman, must naturally be much faster to light than the costly silk dress, which is carefully

stowed away in a dark wardrobe and but seldom sees the daylight.

General regulations as to the experiments which should be carried out in order to test the fastness of a colour can therefore not be of much use, and in every case the judgment should be guided by circumstances.

A material is called *fast to washing* if it will stand boiling with a neutral or slightly alkaline soap, without changing or losing any appreciable quantity of its colour. Some colours will stand boiling with dilute solutions of caustic alkalies, and are then called fast to alkalies; they are very valuable on cotton or linen goods.

In the cloth manufacture it is of great importance that the colours should be *fast to milling*. The term "milling" embraces all those operations which are calculated to effect the felting of the woollen fibres in the fabric by means of pressure or friction, along with fuller's-earth and solutions of soap, soda, stale urine, etc. The better qualities of cloth are dyed in the yarn, or sometimes in the loose wool. From this it is evident that the colours must necessarily withstand the subsequent treatment with alkaline liquids.

Some colours can be rendered faster in milling by the addition of certain substances to the dye-bath. Thus, an addition of magnesium sulphate has the effect of neutralising the effect of the liquid used in milling by the separation of indifferent magnesium hydrate.

Every fabric should be sufficiently *fast to acids* to withstand the action of perspiration, and should therefore not be changed by the organic acids contained in the latter. Most of the dyes used for silk must of necessity possess this property, in order to stand the brightening process to which silk yarns or fabrics are almost invariably subjected after dyeing. *Sulphurous acid* has a peculiar bleaching action on many colouring matters. It is therefore a frequent occurrence that silk goods which are stored in places where gas is burnt, fade in colour.

Heat, also, has an injurious action on many colouring

matters, and this is especially seen in steaming silk or woollen fabrics after printing. The operation of steaming is carried out in the following manner :—The fabrics, after having been printed, are exposed in air-tight boxes or cylinders to the action of low-pressure steam, the temperature of which is not much above 100° C. Colours which will bear this treatment are called *fast to steaming.* Some colours begin to sublimate at this temperature, and are partially deposited on the white parts of the fabric, while others undergo a chemical decomposition. Thus, methyl-green, when steamed for some time, is transformed into methyl-violet. The blue obtained from propiolic acid is also affected in steaming. Some colouring matters are so volatile that fabrics dyed with them colour the paper in which they are wrapped.

Nearly all organic colouring matters are bleached by the continued action of *light* and *air.* Light alone is able to cause chemical changes, but at the same time it favours the formation of small quantities of ozone and peroxide of hydrogen, especially when water gradually evaporates from the surface of the fibre. But even if we do not take into consideration that fabrics become wet with rain, etc., this gradual evaporation is an almost continuous process, since the degree of moisture of the fibre is dependent upon the temperature and moisture of the surrounding atmosphere. Ozone and peroxide of hydrogen belong to the most powerful bleaching agents known, and exercise therefore a destructive action on the colouring matter.

The chemical effects which the different-coloured rays are able to produce vary greatly, the red, yellow and green rays having little or no effect, while the blue, violet and ultra-violet rays possess the most powerful chemical action. For this reason, materials which are worn in gas-light or candle-light do not fade as rapidly as those which are exposed to daylight, for the light emitted by these artificial illuminating agents contains a much smaller proportion of blue and violet rays than daylight.

It can easily be ascertained whether a colour is *fast to light* by exposing one-half of the material to the action of direct sunlight, while the other is covered up. Colours which are not fast to light will sometimes show a marked change between the two halves within an hour or two, but certainly within twenty-four hours of direct sunlight. In carrying out the above experiment, it is advisable to expose simultaneously some other colour, which is considered sufficiently fast to light, since nearly all colouring matters lose some of their brilliancy by the action of light.

In place of direct sunlight, which is not always at hand, a powerful electric arc light may be used ; or, failing this, diffused daylight may be collected and made to fall upon the material by means of a large lens. One and the same colouring matter may vary in fastness according to the material on which it is fixed. Thus, vat-indigo when dyed on wool, fades much more rapidly than on silk or cotton, a fact which is most likely due to a reduction of the colouring matter in the interior of the fibre.

The Testing of Colouring Matters.

The complete analysis of a colouring matter is, generally speaking, one of the most difficult subjects which can be placed before a chemist. For it is not only necessary to determine the actual percentage of pure colouring matter, but also that of the impurities which are generally formed in the manufacture, and often so closely resemble the pure colouring matter in their chemical properties that their separation and estimation is rendered extremely difficult. The results of a complete analysis of a colouring matter do not, however, always give an exact criterion of the quality, since the presence of very small quantities of certain impurities may alter the shades considerably in dyeing ; while, on the other hand, the presence of other impurities may not have any injurious effect on the shade.

Comparative dye-trials.

In order to obtain a rapid and reliable estimate of the value of a colouring matter, the best method is to dye with it on the small scale, using for the purpose the same material for which the colouring matter is intended on the large scale.

In carrying out these comparative dye-trials, hanks of yarn of pieces of cloth are generally used, which are all wound or cut to a certain weight, which varies for wool and cotton from 5 to 20 grm., and for silk 2 to 5 grm.

The dye-trials are either carried out in beakers (glass or porcelain) or in small vessels of tin or tinned copper, having about the shape indicated in fig. 13. They are much higher than broad, and the rim is provided with two indentures calculated to hold the glass rod on which the yarn is suspended. Never less than two dye-trials should

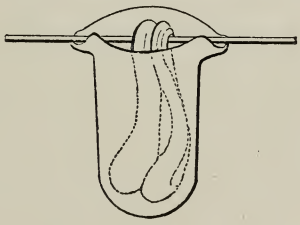


Fig. 13.

be carried out at once, viz., one with the new colouring matter, the other with a colouring matter of known value, which is taken as the "type." It is, however, frequently necessary to compare a larger number of samples with the type.

It is absolutely necessary that all trials should be carried out under exactly the same conditions (temperature, etc.). In order to effect this, it is necessary in the first place to have the dye vessels all of the same material, as uniform as possible in thickness, the quantity of liquid the same in all cases; and in order, lastly, to ensure that

the temperature is the same in each vessel, they should all be placed in a water-bath, or if a higher temperature is necessary, in a glycerine-bath.

The following example will serve to illustrate the method of testing a new colouring matter in the manner described above. Two vessels (glass or tinned copper) are chosen of equal size, and into each is placed the same amount (200 to 600 c.c.) of lukewarm water, as well as equal amounts of those additions which are necessary in using the dye on the large scale, such as sulphuric acid, soap, boiled-off liquor, etc. The weighed hank of yarn or "swatch" of cloth to be used in the experiment is then thoroughly wetted, and immersed in the liquid.

Solutions of known strength of the two colouring matters to be compared are then made by dissolving accurately weighed quantities (from 0·1 to 1 grm.) in 100 c.c. of water or methylated spirits.

The hanks or swatches are then taken out, and equal volumes of each colour solution are added to the respective dye vessels, and after stirring the contents well, the material is again introduced and dyed with a gradual rise of temperature. When the baths are exhausted, further quantities of the colour solutions are added gradually, until both patterns have acquired the proper degree of saturation and appear equal in shade. In working in this manner, it is often found that unequal quantities of the colouring matters are necessary to produce the same shade; and if the quantities added have been accurately measured as described above, this method will not only serve as a comparative test for the purity of shade, but will also give an idea as to the quantitative value of the colouring matter. If, for instance, 9 c.c. of the solution of the colouring matter taken as type had given the same depth of shade as 13 c.c. of the solution of the new colouring matter, we should infer that 100 pts. of the type were as strong as 144 pts. of the sample.

Although it is possible to compare the shades of the

two samples while they are being dyed, it is nevertheless advisable to make the final comparison only after they have been washed and dried. With some practice, it can easily be seen whether two colours are identical, or whether one of them appears a little less pure or duller. Even very slight differences in the tone of the colour, which an outsider can scarcely distinguish, are readily perceived by a practical man. Artificial light is a very important item in comparing shades, especially for the green, blue and violet, since by this means certain peculiarities are brought out very distinctly. Thus, a blue with a slight cast of red appears almost violet in artificial light (gas or lamp light), while a blue with a slight shade of green appears distinctly bluish-green.

It should still be mentioned that, if possible (see below), the dye-bath should be completely exhausted, i.e., the whole of the colouring matter should be taken up by the fibre, and the bath should appear colourless or nearly so. Otherwise, erroneous results may be obtained, since the impurities which have the power of dyeing are generally fixed last by the fibre. The presence of impurities of this kind can easily be detected by preparing a solution of the colouring matter and then dyeing two hanks in it, one after the other, so that the second completely exhausts the bath. The second hank may then be compared with the first, or with another dyed to the same depth of shade in a fresh solution.

Many colouring matters, such as picric acid, etc., cannot be completely withdrawn from their solutions in dyeing. In these cases, equal weights of the colouring matters in question are used for the dye-trials, and the colours produced are compared directly with respect to saturation and purity.

In testing adjective colouring matters, mordanted yarn or cloth must be used, and, after dyeing, the material must be made to pass through all those operations (soaping, clearing, etc.) which it has to undergo on the large scale.

Since the treatment of the different adjective colouring matters varies considerably, no general instructions can be given here.

Lastly, in giving preference to one of several samples of a colouring matter, the price should be taken into account, besides the results of the dye-trials, since it may in many cases be more advantageous to make use of a weaker dye, in case the price is considerably lower. Besides, in dyeing dark or mixed shades, cheaper qualities of a colouring matter can often be used, which may not yield pure shades by themselves.

Colorimetry.

The estimation of the amount of pure colouring matter contained in a sample by means of a colorimeter does not give as reliable results as a comparative dye-trial, and has therefore but little technical importance. For this reason the principle of the colorimeter will only be referred to in a few words. Two glass tubes, closed at one end, and being of exactly the same diameter, are placed close to each other on a stand. Each tube is divided into a certain number of equal parts, say from 0 to 200. Equal weights of the colouring matters to be compared are dissolved in water (alcohol, etc.), and the solutions are poured into the tubes up to the mark 100, when as a rule one will appear somewhat darker than the other. The darker liquid is then diluted with water in small quantities at a time, until both liquids, when looked at horizontally, appear to have the same strength. If, in order to effect this, 35 c.c. had been added to the normal solution (the solution of the type), we should conclude that the dyeing power of the type compared with that of the sample is as 135 : 100.

Impurities in colouring matters.

The impurities found in the artificial colouring matters may either result from the mode of manufacture, or they may have been added for special purposes. In

the latter cases, however, this is seldom done for the purpose of adulteration. Thus, pastes are often mixed with glycerine, in order to prevent the solid constituents settling into a hard cake. On the other hand, many very powerful dyes would necessitate great care in weighing when used in small quantities, and are therefore delivered, according to the wish of the consumer, in a state of dilution, which is effected by mixing with a certain percentage of dextrin, sugar, or some other harmless substance.

The substances used for the adulteration of colouring matters are usually chosen so as to fit the nature of the respective dyes, and are not easily detected in the ordinary application of the same. In many cases a microscopical investigation renders good services. For the detection and quantitative estimation of the admixtures, it is, however, necessary to resort to special methods depending on the properties of the adulterated dye ware, and it is therefore difficult to give any general instructions here.

In all cases, the water and the ash of the sample should be estimated. The estimation of the water is best effected by heating a weighed quantity of the sample in a drying oven to about 160° C. Some colouring matters contain water of crystallisation, which is also given off at this temperature, and should be subtracted from the total, to obtain the actual *percentage of moisture*. In estimating the *dry substance of pastes*, it is not sufficient to take a weighed sample, dry and weigh it, since any other substances contained in the water, such as inorganic salts, glycerine, etc., would also be contained in the residue. Since pastes are often difficult to filter after having been diluted with water, the best method is to evaporate to dryness in a small mortar, after which the residue is finely pulverised, and treated with water. The residue, which has now assumed a pulverulent condition, is collected on a tared filter, washed out well with water, dried at 100°, and weighed.

By the *estimation of the ash*, the presence of inorganic adulterants can easily be detected. It should, however, be borne in mind that certain salts may have become mixed with the dye in the ordinary process of manufacture, and that many colouring matters are combined with inorganic bases, or are brought into commerce in the shape of double salts, and must therefore of necessity contain a certain percentage of ash, which can easily be calculated from the formula.

Organic impurities can frequently be detected by dissolving a sample in water, and withdrawing the colouring matter from the solution by means of wool or silk. The impurities which have remained in solution will be contained in the residue on evaporation, and can then be subjected to a closer investigation. An admixture of *cane sugar* can easily be detected in the following manner, should the colouring matter be soluble in absolute alcohol:—The sample is extracted with absolute alcohol containing a little ether, until the residue of sugar is rendered almost colourless, when it is collected on a tared filter and weighed. In case the colouring matter is soluble in water and can be precipitated by acetate of lead, another method may be used. A weighed quantity of the sample is dissolved in water and treated with excess of acetate of lead, when the liquid is filtered, and the sugar is estimated in the filtrate by polarisation. For the estimation of cane sugar in magenta, a colouring matter which is not precipitated by acetate of lead, this method has been modified in the following manner:—A weighed sample is dissolved in water, the rosaniline is precipitated by picric acid, the picric acid by acetate of lead, and the liquid thus freed from colouring matter is analysed in the polariscope.

Dextrin, too, is often used for adulterating or diluting the coal-tar colours, and in some cases gum-arabic is used for this purpose. The detection of these substances depends upon their insolubility in alcohol. If the colouring matters are soluble in water, the following is the best method to adopt:—

From 1 to 2 grams of the substance are dissolved in as little water as possible, and the solution is filtered into a beaker, which has been previously weighed, along with a glass rod. On adding a sufficient quantity of alcohol, the whole of the dextrin is precipitated in flakes, which on stirring form a coherent mass, which adheres partly to the glass rod and partly to the sides of the vessel. The liquid is poured off, while the beaker and glass rod are washed with absolute alcohol, dried at 110°, and weighed.

The quantitative estimation of dextrin in colouring matters which are soluble in alcohol is effected by exhausting repeatedly with strong alcohol, after which the residue is dissolved in water and reprecipitated with alcohol in the manner described above.

PART II.

COAL-TAR.

If animal or vegetable substances are heated in vessels without access of air, a complete decomposition takes place. A large number of volatile products are formed, which are partially condensed in the receivers in a liquid or semi-solid state; another portion passes over in the form of gases, while the residue which remains in the retort consists chiefly of carbon. The condensed product usually consists of two distinct layers: an aqueous one, containing several substances in solution; and another one, which is generally of a dark colour, and is known as tar.

The products of the dry distillation of coal, which is carried out on the large scale for the manufacture of coal-gas may be conveniently divided into four classes:— Coal-gas, ammonia liquor, coal-tar, and coke. Coal-tar is the only one of these which is of importance in the manufacture of the artificial colouring matters. It consists of a large number of different substances, which, according to their chemical reactions, can be divided into three groups.

The first of these comprises the *hydrocarbons*, which, as their name implies, consist of carbon and hydrogen. They are indifferent substances, possessing neither acid nor basic properties, and are therefore insoluble in dilute acids and alkalies. They constitute the principal part, and at the same time the most valuable part, of coal-tar. Benzene, toluene, xylene, naphthalene and anthracene are the most important of these hydrocarbons.

The number of substances contained in the second group

is limited, but they exceed those of the third group in quantity. They consist of the *phenoles*, bodies which are composed of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen. The phenoles are weak acids, and therefore dissolve in caustic alkalies, whereas in dilute acids they are insoluble. The most important phenoles contained in coal-tar are carbolic acid and cressol.

The third group, lastly, comprises a large number of *bases*, but none of these are contained in sufficiently large quantity to admit of their technical preparation from this source. The bases are composed of carbon, hydrogen and nitrogen. They are soluble in acids, but insoluble in alkalies. As characteristic members of this group may be mentioned aniline, toluidine, etc.

Almost all those products which are contained in coal-tar in larger quantities have been successfully utilised in the manufacture of colouring matters. The most important of these are benzene, toluene, xylene, naphthalene, anthracene and phenol.

The separation and preparation of these products in the pure state forms a special branch of industry, the distillation of coal-tar. The portions of coal-tar which cannot be made use of in the preparation of colouring matters are generally used for other purposes. Thus one portion of the hydrocarbons is used as a solvent, under the name of "solvent naphtha"; crude carbolic acid is used for impregnating sleepers and for disinfecting purposes, while other portions of coal-tar are used as lubricants, and so on.

The distillation of Coal-tar.

The separation of the different constituents of coal-tar is effected by means of fractional distillation, a process which depends upon the fact that, on heating a mixture of different liquids, the one which has the lowest boiling-point will pass over first into the distillate, the others following in order according to their boiling-points. As

a simple example, we will take a mixture of absolute alcohol, which boils at 78° C., and water, which boils at 100° C. If this mixture is distilled, it will begin to boil at 78°, and at first almost pure alcohol will pass over. The separation by this ready means is, however, not an exact one, since very soon a part of the liquid of higher boiling-point is drawn over. If we were to divide the distillate obtained in our example into three equal parts, we should find that the first contained a strong alcohol, the second a very aqueous alcohol, while the third fraction would consist almost of pure water.

The boiling-points of the different constituents of coal-tar vary very considerably; benzene, for instance, boils at 80°, while anthracene boils at 370°. It is therefore possible in separating the fractions of the first distillation to obtain certain constituents in the first fraction only, while others are contained in the second or third.

The process of distillation is carried out in large iron retorts. The first distillate is divided into three portions, the first of which contains all the products which pass over up to 180°, and which are technically known as *light oil*. The second fraction consists of the *heavy oil*, so called because it sinks in water. The first portions of the heavy oil which pass over remain liquid on cooling, but after a time the distillate assumes the consistency of butter, owing to the separation of solid naphthalene. The distillate then becomes liquid again, and it is not until solid constituents have begun to separate out again that the third fraction, the so-called *green grease* or *anthracene oil*, is collected. The residue which remains in the retort is known as *pitch*, and is used in the preparation of asphalt, or of a fuel known as "briquettes."

The light oil which passes over between 80° and 180° is treated successively with soda ley, water, sulphuric acid, and again with water, in order to free it from small quantities of phenoles and basic constituents, after which it is distilled again.

The manufacture of pure benzene, toluene and xylene from the light oil purified in the manner described, is carried out by fractional distillation. The stills used for this purpose are provided with dephlegmators, by which means it is possible to obtain almost pure products in one, or at most in two operations.

The principle of these distilling apparatus is, not to allow the vapour which is given off by the boiling liquid to pass immediately into the condenser; but it is first caused to pass through a series of pipes and vessels, which are so arranged as to allow any liquid condensing on their walls to flow back into the still. The temperature of these vessels is regulated so as to allow only a portion of the vapour, i.e., that of the liquid of lowest boiling-point, to pass through, while those possessing higher boiling-points will be condensed and will flow back. If, for instance, the liquid in the still consisted of a mixture of benzene (B.P. 80°) and toluene (B.P. 111°), and the vapour of the two were caused to pass through a series of pipes heated to 80°, it is evident that the toluene will be condensed, while the benzene will pass through and can subsequently be liquefied in an ordinary condenser. It should not be imagined that by this process a quantitative separation can always be effected in one operation, although one form of condenser which is used on the large scale, and is known as "Savalle's column apparatus," will produce an almost pure benzene by the first distillation.

When the greater part of the benzene has been obtained, the temperature of the condensing vessels is raised, when a small quantity of liquid, consisting of a mixture of benzene and toluene, passes over and is collected separately. Afterwards pure toluene passes over for a length of time. Then comes xylene, which can also be isolated in a like manner; but this is not always done. The liquid remaining in the stills after distilling off the benzene and toluene is generally made use of for other purposes (solvent naphtha, etc.).

The heavy oil yields *carbolic acid* and *naphthalene*. The naphthalene is separated out in the solid state when the oil cools. It is pressed, treated alternately with caustic soda ley and sulphuric acid, after which it is purified by distillation or sublimation.

The separation of the crude carbolic acid, which consists chiefly of a mixture of phenol and cressol, is based upon the property of all phenoles to dissolve in caustic alkalies. The heavy oil is agitated with caustic soda ley, and the aqueous layer having been drawn off, is exposed to the air for some time. This exposure causes certain impurities to separate out in the form of a brown resinous substance. The liquid is then filtered and the phenoles are set free by the addition of an acid, when they are obtained in the form of an oil. Many methods are in vogue for the separation of pure phenol and cressol from this product, but the most rapid is a fractional distillation in a dephlegmation apparatus.

Commercial *anthracene* is obtained in the following manner from the so-called "green grease":—The oil is removed as much as possible by filtration, and the residue is pressed between warm plates, after which it is treated in a fine state of division with solvent naphtha. It is then pressed again, and finally sublimated with a current of steam. In this form the product is adapted for the manufacture of alizarin, although it still contains from 50 to 55 per cent. of impurities, which are very difficult to remove on the large scale.

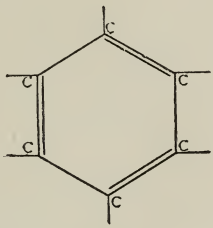
The following are the properties of the most important constituents of coal-tar:—

Benzene, C_6H_6.

Benzene is a colourless, mobile liquid, possessing a specific gravity of 0·885 at 15° C. It boils at 80°, and freezes at 0° to a colourless mass consisting of rhombic prisms. It is insoluble in water, dilute acids, and alkalies, but easily soluble in or miscible with alcohol, ether,

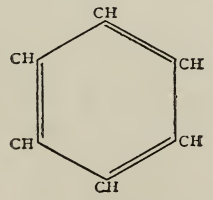
chloroform, etc. It is a good solvent for fats, resin, etc. It burns in the air with a luminous smoky flame.

Benzene can be regarded as the simplest representative of a large class of compounds which are known as "aromatic compounds," and to which nearly all the artificial organic colouring matters belong. It contains six atoms of carbon, which are bound together in the following manner,—



and which are known as the benzene ring. The benzene ring is very stable, and is only split up by very energetic chemical action.

In benzene itself the six free affinities shown in the previous diagram are each saturated with one atom of hydrogen, so that its constitutional formula would be—



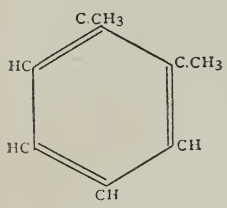
Toluene, $C_6H_5CH_3$.

If one of the hydrogen atoms of benzene is replaced by methyl (CH_3), methylbenzene, or toluene, is formed. Experience has shown that whichever hydrogen atom in the benzene ring is replaced, one and the same toluene is invariably obtained.

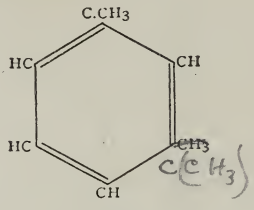
Toluene is lighter than benzene. Its specific gravity is 0·872 at 15°. It does not solidify on cooling, and its boiling-point lies at 111°.

Xylenes, $C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$.

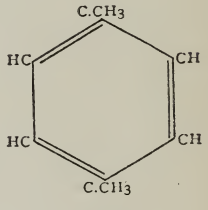
If two atoms of hydrogen in the benzene ring are replaced by methyl, three isomeric xylenes are formed which each possess the formula $C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$. They are distinguished from each other by their constitutional formulæ in the following manner:—



(1, 2.)

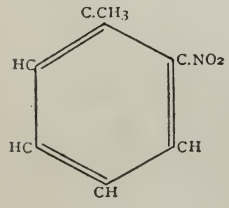


(1, 3.)

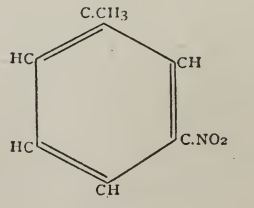


(1, 4.)

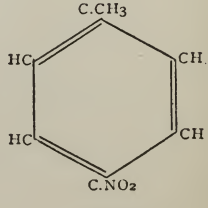
For convenience sake the carbon atoms of the benzene ring are numbered from 1 to 6, beginning usually at the top and proceeding to the right hand. By this means it is possible to express a constitutional formula without making a diagram. The position (1, 2) is known as the ortho, (1, 3) as the meta, and (1, 4) as the para position. The three xylenes referred to above are thus known as Ortho, Meta, and Para xylene, respectively. As another instance the three isomeric dinitrobenzenes would be shown thus:—



Ortho.



Meta.



Para.

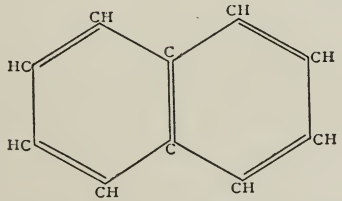
The xylene obtained from coal-tar consists of a mixture of the three xylenes, which can exist according to theory; but of these, metaxylene is present in by far the largest proportion. The boiling-points of the three xylenes lie so near each other (about 140°) that a separation by fractional distillation is not possible.

Xylene is lighter than benzene or toluene. Its specific gravity is 0·866 at 15°.

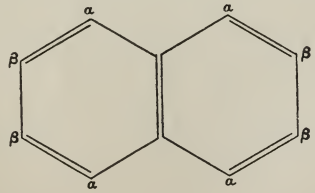
Naphthalene.

Naphthalene consists of white leaflets, which possess a peculiar smell, and sublimate slowly at the ordinary temperature.

It melts at 79·2° and boils at 216°. The constitutional formula of naphthalene can be regarded as a double benzene ring, and is expressed as follows:—



It will be seen in looking at this formula that in the formation of mono-substitution products two isomers are obtained, according as the hydrogen atoms marked β or those marked α are replaced in the following scheme:—



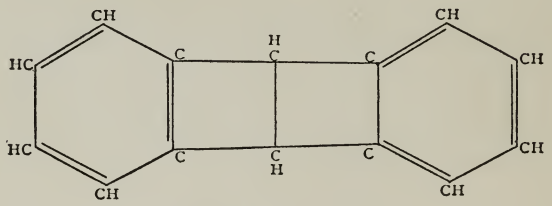
Thus by replacing one hydrogen atom by OH, two

isomeric naphtholes are obtained, which are known as alpha-napthol and beta-naphthol respectively, but both possess the rational formula $C_{10}H_7OH$.

Anthracene, $C_{14}H_{10}$.

Anthracene forms leaflets with a violet fluorescence. They melt at 213° and boil at 360°.

Anthracene contains two separate benzene rings, which are joined together by the group C_2H_2. The constitution is shown in the following :—



Phenol, C_6H_5OH.

Phenol forms colourless needle-shaped crystals, which possess a peculiar well-known smell (carbolic acid). The crystals melt at 40 to 41° and boil at 182°. It is heavier than water, having a specific gravity of 1·084 at 0°. 1 pt. of phenol dissolves in 15 pts. of water. It is easily soluble in ammonia and alkalies.

The substances referred to above are utilised in the following manner in the colour manufacture :—

Benzene and toluene yield aniline and toluidine, which are used for the manufacture of the rosaniline dyes, the indulines, safranines, aniline-black (dyeing), methylene-blue, and a number of the azo dyes.

Pure benzene is used besides for the manufacture of resorcin, and is therefore one of the raw materials for the manufacture of the eosin dyes.

Toluene, which is free from benzene, can be transformed into benzal chloride and artificial oil of bitter almonds,

which are used in the manufacture of green colouring matters (malachite-green) and artificial indigo.

Xylene, after having been transformed into xylidine, serves for the manufacture of certain azo dyes.

Phenol yields picric acid and some other colouring matters of less importance.

From naphthalene, magdala-red and some yellow dyes are obtained. Its greatest importance is, however, in the manufacture of the azo dyes. It yields, further, the phthalic acid which is necessary for the preparation of the eosins and of cæruleïn.

Anthracene yields alizarin, the purpurines, alizarin-orange, and alizarin-blue.

PART III.

THE COAL-TAR COLOURS.

The coal-tar colours are usually divided into a number of groups, each of which deals with those products which are obtained from the same constituents of tar. Thus we have :—

1. Colouring matters from benzene and toluene.
2. Phenol colouring matters.
3. Naphthalene colouring matters.
4. Anthracene colouring matters.

The materials used in the preparation of many colouring matters are, however, sometimes derived from two, sometimes from three constituents of coal-tar. Thus, the eosins are obtained from phthalic acid and resorcin. The former is again obtained from naphthalene, while the latter is obtained from benzene. Eosin can therefore either be classed among those colouring matters which are obtained from benzene, or among the naphthalene colouring matters. Resorcin itself is a phenol, so that eosin might also be regarded as a phenol dye.

In order to overcome these difficulties, and especially in order to describe all those colouring matters which possess similar properties (although they may have originated from different sources) under one heading, the following classification of the most important colouring matters will be adhered to in this work:—

I. *Aniline dyes.*
   (*a*) Rosaniline group.
   (*b*) Indulines and Safranines.
   (*c*) Aniline-black.
   (*d*) Colouring matters containing sulphur.

II. *Phenol dyes.*
   (*a*) Nitro bodies.
   (*b*) Colouring matters which are formed by the action of nitrous acid on the phenoles.
   (*c*) Rosolic acid.
   (*d*) Phthaleins and Indophenoles.

III. *Azo dyes.*
   (*a*) Amidoazo dyes.
   (*b*) Amidoazo sulphonic acids.
   (*c*) Oxyazo dyes.

IV. Artificial indigo.

V. Anthracene dyes.

I. Aniline Dyes.

The denomination "aniline dyes" is not applicable to all the colouring matters described in this section. The term "amine dyes" would perhaps be more suitable, as it would include dye-stuffs from naphthylamine, as well as from aniline and toluidine; "aniline dyes" of known constitution may indeed be regarded as complicated amines. In the following, all dyes are described as "aniline dyes" which contain nitrogenous bases, or their derivatives,—for example, their sulphonic acids,—with the only exception of those which can with certainty be called "azo dyes."

Of the raw materials for the manufacture of aniline dyes, only aniline, toluidine, and naphthylamine, will be described here; the more important of the others will be described along with the respective colouring matters produced from them.

Aniline, $C_6H_5NH_2$, *and Toluidine*, $C_7H_7NH_2$.

These amines are obtained from benzene and toluene, by nitration and reduction of the resulting nitro bodies.

The nitration is effected, with certain precautions, especially with regard to temperature, with a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acids. If the mixture becomes too strongly heated, dinitro products are produced in place of the mononitro derivatives desired.

Nitrobenzene, $C_6H_5NO_2$, is formed according to the equation:—

$$\underset{\text{Benzene.}}{C_6H_6} + HNO_3 = \underset{\text{Nitrobenzene.}}{C_6H_5NO_2} + H_2O.$$

It is a yellow liquid, solidifying at $+3°$, boiling at 213°, and is heavier than water (sp. gr. 1·2). It possesses a a smell resembling that of oil of bitter almonds, and is sometimes used in perfumery under the name of "artificial oil of bitter almonds," or "mirbane oil." The first name often leads to confusion with the benzaldehyde prepared from toluene, which is distinguished from the natural product by the name "artificial oil of bitter almonds."

In accordance with the benzene theory, there is only one mononitrobenzene, while there are three mononitrotoluenes, C_6H_4, NO_2, CH_3, which are distinguished as Ortho (O), Meta (M), and Para (P) nitrotoluenes.

By nitration of toluene, a mixture of ortho- and para-nitrotoluene is formed, with only a very small quantity of the meta compound. A separation of these two nitrotoluenes is never carried out on a large scale.

Ortho-nitrotoluene is a liquid which boils at 223°. It solidifies at $-20°$. Sp. gr., 1·17.

Para-nitrotoluene forms crystals which melt at 54°, and boil at 238°. The reduction of nitrobenzene and toluene is effected by iron and hydrochloric acid.

$$\underset{\text{Nitrobenzene.}}{C_6H_5NO_2} + 3Fe + 6HCl = \underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5 \cdot NH_2} + 3FeCl_2 + 2H_2O.$$

The ferrous chloride yields with the aniline, ferrous hydrate and aniline hydrochloride. The ferrous hydrate reduces more nitrobenzene, whilst the aniline hydrochloride acts on the metallic iron again, producing ferrous chloride and free aniline.

The reduction is carried out with the aid of a gentle heat. When it is over, slaked lime is added, to decompose any aniline hydrochloride, and the product is then distilled with steam. The oily layer of the distillate is separated from the aqueous one, and purified by distillation.

Aniline, $C_6H_5NH_2$, is a colourless oil which boils at 183°. On exposure to the air it becomes brown. Its specific gravity is 1·03.

One part of aniline dissolves in 31 parts of water; it is easily soluble in alcohol, ether, etc. It is a good solvent for many substances which are sparingly soluble in other liquids; e.g., indigo. One method of purifying aniline-blue is based upon its solubility in aniline oil.

Aniline is a very strong base, forming with acids well crystallised salts.

Ortho-toluidine is a liquid boiling at 198°, which does not solidify at −20°. Its specific gravity is nearly the same as that of water.

Para-toluidine forms leaflets, which melt at 45°, and boil at 198°.

For the qualitative detection of toluidine in aniline, a small sample is shaken with water, and chloride of lime or sodium hypochlorite is added to the aqueous solution. The purple-violet solution is shaken with ether. In presence of toluidine the ethereal layer will assume a permanent brown colour, while the aqueous solution is blue.

This reaction furnishes, at the same time, an example of the property of aniline of yielding colouring matters by oxidation. The nature of the colouring matters formed depends upon the duration of the oxidation, the tempera-

ture, the proportions employed, and the quantity of toluidine in the aniline.

The aniline oils of commerce are a mixture of aniline and ortho- and para-toluidine. They sometimes also contain xylidine, $C_6H_3(CH_3)_2NH_2$. The following varieties are distinguished :—

Pure aniline, or *aniline for blue*, with very little toluidine.

Aniline for safranine contains 35 per cent. of aniline; the rest consists of toluidine and a little xylidine.

Aniline for red (red oil) contains 20 per cent. of aniline, 40 per cent. of para-, and 40 per cent. of ortho-toluidine.

Toluidine is a mixture of ortho- and para-toluidine, with very little aniline.

Naphthylamines, $C_{10}H_7NH_2$.

Alpha-naphthylamine forms fine needles, which melt at 50°, and possess a disagreeable smell. It is almost insoluble in water. It yields colouring matters by oxidation.

In order to prepare it, naphthalene is heated with nitric and sulphuric acids, and the resulting alpha-nitro-naphthalene, $C_{10}H_7NH_2$, is reduced with iron and hydrochloric acid.

It serves for the preparation of Magdala-red, the naphthalene fancy colours on cotton, and some azo dyes.

Beta-naphthylamine forms white leaflets, which melt at 112°. It dissolves in hot water. It is prepared by heating fused beta-naphthol with gaseous ammonia. Some azo dyes are derived from it.

The aniline dyes may be suitably classed as follows :—

(*a*) Dyes of the Rosaniline Group.
(*b*) Induline and Safranine.
(*c*) Aniline-black and Naphthameïn.
(*d*) Dyes containing Sulphur.

(*a*) THE ROSANILINE GROUP.

The colouring matters of this group may be regarded as derivatives of two hydrocarbons: triphenylmethane,

$C_{19}H_{16}$, and tolyldiphenylmethane, $C_{20}H_{18}$. Their constitution is expressed by the following formulæ:—

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_5\\C_6H_5\\C_6H_5\\H\end{cases}$$

Triphenylmethane.

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4CH_3\\C_6H_5\\C_6H_5\\H\end{cases}$$

Tolyldiphenylmethane.

The carbon atom which joins the three benzene rings to each other is distinguished as "methane carbon."

If one hydrogen atom in two or three phenyl groups is replaced by NH_2, and further, the hydrogen of the NH_2 group is replaced by methyl, benzyl, phenyl, etc., we obtain a series of nitrogenous compounds; e.g.:—

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_5\\H\end{cases}$$

Diamidotriphenylmethane.

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\H\end{cases}$$

Triamidotriphenylmethane. (Para-leucaniline.)

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2\\C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2\\C_6H_5\\H\end{cases}$$

Tetramethyldiamidotriphenylmethane. (Leuco-base of malachite-green.)

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4NH\cdot C_6H_5\\C_6H_4NH\cdot C_6H_5\\C_6H_4NH\cdot C_6H_5\\H\end{cases}$$

Triphenyleucaniline.

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2\\C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2\\C_6H_4N(CH_3)H\\H\end{cases}$$

Pentamethylleucaniline.

These compounds, called "leuco-bases," are colourless, and yield colourless salts with acids. By oxidation they are transformed, more or less readily, into the colour-bases, which differ from the "leuco-bases" by containing one atom of oxygen.

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\H\end{cases}$$

Para-leucaniline.

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\OH\end{cases}$$

Para-rosaniline.

The colour-bases are generally colourless, or nearly so. They unite with acids, with elimination of water to form coloured salts, the real dye-stuffs. The manner in which this splitting off of water takes place has not been satisfactorily explained for all colouring matters. In the case of para-rosaniline it takes place according to the equation:—

$$\begin{cases}C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\OH\end{cases} + HCl = C\begin{cases}C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NH_2\\C_6H_4NHHCl\end{cases} + H_2O.$$

Besides these mono-acid, coloured salts, the bases yield a series of compounds containing two or more equivalents of acid, which are generally yellow or brown. Hydrochloride of rosaniline, or magenta, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3HCl$, unites with two molecules of hydrochloric acid to form the triacid salt, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3 3HCl$.

This explains the behaviour of the colouring matters of this group, in aqueous solution, or on the fibre, towards concentrated acids. Decolourisation takes place, but on adding water, the acid salt is decomposed, and the original colour is restored.

There exists also, in dilute solutions, a certain attraction between the normal salts (with one molecule of hydrochloric acid) and the free acid, and the consequence is, that in dyeing, the colouring matters of this group are either not absorbed at all, or only very imperfectly so, from a bath acidified with a mineral acid. For this reason these dyes must be dyed in a neutral or only very slightly acid bath.

The colouring matters of this group unite with the fibres as salts, and not as free bases. They give with some acids precipitates insoluble in water (colour-lakes). The tannic acid lakes are soluble in alcohol. They also possess to some extent the property of uniting chemically with basic oxides, such as stannic oxide and alumina.

Thus, magenta may be fixed on cotton, if it is printed with acetate or arseniate of alumina and then steamed, but the colour is not fast. The weak affinity which fibres prepared with mineral mordants possess for some aniline dyes may, however, be ascribed in most cases to physical influences.

Malachite-green.

(Solid Green, Victoria Green, New Green, Benzal Green.)

The organic raw materials used in the preparation of this dye-stuff, are dimethylaniline and benzaldehyde, or benzyl chloride.

Dimethylaniline, $C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2$, is obtained by heating aniline with methyl alcohol and hydrochloric acid:—

$$C_6H_5NH_2 + 2\,CH_3Cl + 2\,NaHO = C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2 + 2NaCl + 2\,H_2O.$$

In commerce dimethylaniline is commonly called methylaniline. It is a liquid which boils at 192° to 194°.

Benzotrichloride, $C_6H_5CCl_3$, is obtained by the action of chlorine-gas on boiling toluene:—

$$C_6H_5CH_3 + 3\,Cl_2 = C_6H_5CCl_3 + 3\,HCl.$$

It boils at 213°.

Benzaldehyde, C_6H_5COH, is also prepared from toluene. Chlorine is passed into boiling toluene as in the preparation of benzotrichloride, but the chlorination is only carried on so far as to form benzyl chloride, $C_6H_5CH_2Cl$, or benzal chloride, $C_6H_5CHCl_2$. Benzyl chloride is con-

verted into benzaldehyde by oxidation with nitrate of lead or copper:—

$$C_6H_5CH_2Cl + O = C_6H_5COH + HCl.$$

Benzal chloride is decomposed by caustic soda according to the following equation:—

$$C_6H_5CHCl_2 + 2NaOH = C_6H_5COH + 2NaCl + H_2O,$$

and can therefore also be used for the preparation of benzaldehyde.

Benzaldehyde is a colourless liquid, which boils at 179°, and which is sparingly soluble in water, easily so in alcohol. It gradually oxidises in the air to benzoic acid, C_6H_5COOH.

The colouring matter prepared by heating benzotrichloride and dimethylaniline, is known as malachite-green. Technically, the following method is more advantageous.

Benzaldehyde is heated with dimethylaniline and zinc chloride in alcoholic solution. The leuco-base of the green is thus formed:—

$$\begin{matrix} C_6H_5 \\ | \\ C = O \\ | \\ H \end{matrix} + 2C_6H_5N\begin{matrix} -CH_3 \\ -CH_3 \end{matrix} = C\begin{cases} C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_4N\begin{matrix} -CH_3 \\ -CH_3 \end{matrix} \\ C_6H_4N\begin{matrix} -CH_3 \\ -CH_3 \end{matrix} \\ H \end{cases} + H_2O$$

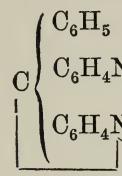
Benzaldehyde. Dimethylaniline. Tetramethyldiamidotriphenylmethane.

The leuco-base is precipitated with water, freed from unchanged dimethylaniline, dissolved in hydrochloric acid, and oxidised with lead peroxide. The free colour-base has the formula—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2 \\ C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2 \\ OH. \end{cases}$$

The manner in which it unites with acids, with

elimination of water, is not yet explained. Probably the hydrochloride has the formula :—



The hydrochloride is not well defined, and more difficult to separate than the oxalate and zinc double salt, both of which are commercial articles.

Properties.—The oxalate has the composition—

$$2\,C_{23}H_{24}N_2 + 3\,C_2H_2O_4.$$

It forms tablets possessing a green metallic lustre, which dissolve easily in water, alcohol, and amylic alcohol.

The zinc double salt, $3(C_{23}H_{24}N_2HCl)+2\,ZnCl_2+2H_2O$, also crystallises well, with a yellow-green cantharides lustre. An inferior quality consists of the ferric chloride compound with the hydrochloride of the base.

The picrate is insoluble in water.

By adding caustic potash solution to a solution of one of the above salts, the free base separates out. It crystallises from ligroin in colourless needles, which melt at 126° to 130°.

The solutions of the colouring matter are bluish-green; concentrated acids turn them orange-yellow, but the original colour is restored on dilution. *Stannous chloride* produces a green precipitate, chloride of lime decolourises the solution.

Application.—Silk is dyed in a pure soap bath, and brightened with acetic acid. *Wool* is dyed in a very weak acid bath. If too much acid is present, the colouring matter is not taken up completely. For dyeing and printing cotton, tannin is used, along with alumina mordants, or tartar emetic.

This green will stand neither soaping nor milling.

It may be detected on the fibre by the reaction with soap, or the orange colour with hydrochloric acid, which is restored by water. Acetic acid removes the colouring matter with a bluish-green tint, ammonia and alkalies completely decolourise. By heating, the colour does not change to violet. (Distinction from methyl-green.)

Other greens belonging to this class are Ethyl-green, Solid Green J (New Victoria Green, Brilliant Green). They are obtained when diethylaniline, $C_6H_5N(C_2H_5)_2$, is used instead of dimethylaniline, $C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2$. These colouring matters also occur in commerce as oxalates or zinc double salts. The oxalate $C_{27}H_{32}N_2+C_2H_2O_4+H_2O$, loses its golden lustre by the action of the light. The zinc double salt has a red metallic lustre.

These colouring matters have a yellower tone than those obtained from dimethylaniline.

Helvetia-green, Acid Green, Light Green S.

These colouring matters are the sulphonic acids of the various sorts of benzaldehyde-greens. They are prepared by two methods: either the green base is treated with concentrated sulphuric acid, or the leuco-base is treated with sulphuric acid, and the resulting leuco-sulphonic acids are oxidised.

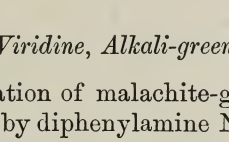
The monosulphonic acid of solid green, $C_{23}H_{23}N_2 \cdot SO_3H$, crystallises in green needles, with a reddish-brown reflex. It is easily soluble in hot water, with a green colour, but only sparingly soluble in cold water. The sodium salt is sparingly soluble in water. It forms white, silvery needles, which gradually become green in the air. The calcium, and most other salts, are sparingly soluble in water.

The sulphonic acid of solid green J is darker coloured, and possesses very little reflex.

Acid green dyes a brighter colour than solid green. It may be dyed from baths containing more acid, but is far less productive. Caustic soda solution gives no precipitate in dilute solutions (difference from solid green); strong soda ley gives a white precipitate. When dyed on the fibre, it gives nearly the same reactions as benzaldehyde-green. The behaviour towards concentrated hydrochloric acid serves to distinguish between the two. Helvetia-green is turned greenish-yellow, and the liquid is coloured yellow, while benzaldehyde-green turns a bright orange and gives up very little colour. Water reproduces the colour in both cases.

Viridine, Alkali-green.

If in the preparation of malachite-green, the dimethylaniline is replaced by diphenylamine $NH(C_6H_5)_2$, viridine is obtained. It probably possesses the constitution—



It forms microscopic, bronze-coloured crystals, which are insoluble in water, but are soluble in alcohol with green colour.

By treating it with sulphuric acid, a sulphonic acid, insoluble in water, is formed. The soluble salts of the latter form the alkali-green of commerce.

A green colouring matter, probably identical with viridine, is formed by the oxidation of benzyldiphenylamine, $N(C_6H_5)_2C_7H_7$, with chloranil. It also yields an alkali-green with sulphuric acid.

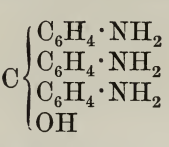
Alkali-green only finds a very limited application, as it cannot be dyed in an acid bath. It is dyed in the same manner as alkali-blue, and may be used along with it for producing greenish-blue shades.

Aniline-red, Magenta.

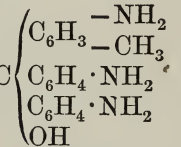
Commercial aniline-red is not a uniform substance, but a mixture of the salts of two bases—para-rosaniline, $C_{19}H_{19}N_3O$, and rosaniline, $C_{20}H_{21}N_3O$.

Since Hofmann's important investigations on aniline dyes, numerous attempts have been made to discover the constitution of the above bases. This question was first solved by MM. Emil and Otto Fischer.

One of the two bases, para-rosaniline, like benzaldehyde-green, is a derivative of triphenylmethane. The other, rosaniline, is derived from tolyldiphenylmethan. They possess the formulæ—

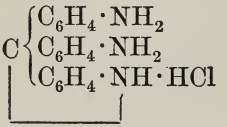


Para-rosaniline.

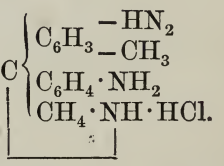


Rosaniline.

They unite with acids with elimination of water. Thus, with hydrochloric acid, they form—

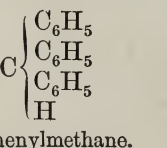


and

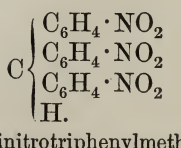


In order to give a clearer idea of the formulæ, a description of the synthesis of rosaniline will be given here.

(1.) If triphenylmethane is treated with nitric acid, trinitrotriphenylmethane is obtained.



Triphenylmethane.



Trinitrotriphenylmethane.

This, when treated with chromic acid, yields—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot NO_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NO_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NO_2 \\ OH \end{cases}$$

Trinitrotriphenylcarbinol,

which, when partially reduced by zinc powder and acetic acid, is converted to para-rosaniline; i.e., triamidotriphenylcarbinol.

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ OH. \end{cases}$$

The para-rosaniline immediately unites with acetic acid, to form acetate of para-rosaniline.

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH\cdot C_2H_4O_2. \end{cases}$$

Rosaniline may be prepared from tolyldiphenylmethane in a similar manner.

(2.) A method, analogous to the preparation of benzaldehyde-green, has been patented, but is without practical value.

By heating the hydrochlorides of aniline, and para-amidobenzaldehyde with zinc chloride, para-leucaniline is obtained according to the equation:—

$$\begin{matrix} C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ | \\ C = O \\ - H \end{matrix} + 2C_6H_5NH_2 = C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ H \end{cases} + H_2O$$

Amidobenzaldehyde. Aniline. Para-leucaniline.

The para-leucaniline may be oxidised with chloranil, $C_6Cl_4O_2$, or manganese dioxide, to para-rosaniline.

(3.) Para-nitrobenzaldehyde acts on aniline sulphate according to the equation :—

$$\begin{matrix} C_6H_4\cdot NO_2 \\ | \\ C = O \\ | \\ - H \end{matrix} + 2C_6H_5NH_2 = C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot NO_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ H \end{cases} + H_2O$$

Nitrobenzaldehyde. Aniline. Nitrodiamidotriphenylmethane.

The purified product is heated with ferrous chloride, whereby the nitro group is reduced to an amido group, and the ferric chloride formed converts the methane hydrogen into hydroxyl, so that in one operation para-rosaniline is produced.

Rosaniline may be prepared by this method, if 1 molecule of nitro-benzaldehyde acts on 1 molecule of ortho-toluidine, $C_6H_4\begin{matrix} -CH_3 \\ -NH_2 \end{matrix}$, and 1 molecule of aniline.

(4.) Further, by the action of benzaldehyde on aniline, or a mixture of aniline and toluidine :—

$$\begin{matrix} C_6H_5 \\ | \\ C = O \\ | \\ - H \end{matrix} + 2C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 = C\begin{cases} C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ H \end{cases} + H_2O$$

Benzaldelyde. Aniline. Diamidotriphenylmethane.

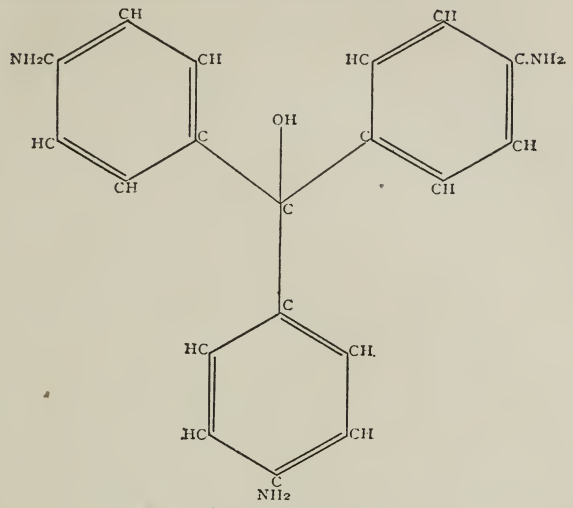
The diamidotriphenylmethane is treated with nitric acid, and the resulting nitrodiamidotriphenylmethane—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot NO_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \\ H \end{cases}$$

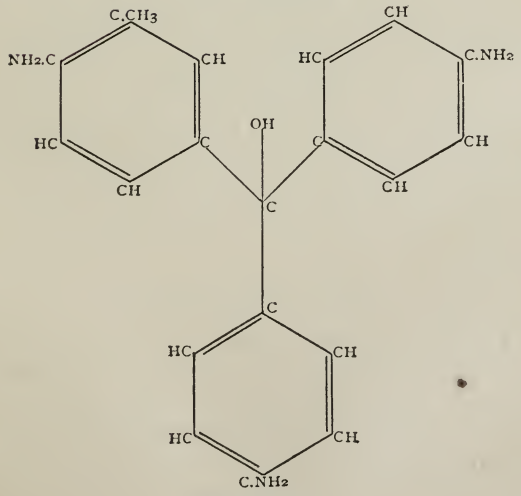
is converted into para-rosaniline by method 3.

The formation of rosaniline from para-nitro, and from para-amido benzaldehyde, proves that at least one of the amido groups must be in the para position as regards the methane carbon. The study of the decomposition products of rosaniline has further shown the relative positions

of the amido and methyl groups, so that the constitution may be expressed as follows :—

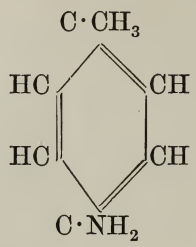


Para-rosaniline.



Rosaniline.

Commercial rosaniline is obtained by oxidation of aniline oil. From the constitution of rosaniline, it follows that para-toluidine



must be contained in it, as it is the only toluidine which can yield the methane carbon in the para position, with regard to the amido groups.

The most beautiful reds are obtained when para-toluidine and aniline, or para-toluidine, aniline, and ortho-toluidine are oxidised according to the following equations:—

$$\underset{\text{Para-toluidine.}}{CH_3\cdot C_6H_4\cdot NH_2} + 2\underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2} + 3O = \underset{\text{Para-rosaniline.}}{C_{19}H_{17}N_3} + 3H_2O.$$

$$\underset{\text{Para-toluidine.}}{CH_3\cdot C_6H_4\cdot NH_2} + \underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2} + \underset{\text{Ortho-toluidine.}}{CH_3\cdot C_6H_4NH_2} + 3O = \underset{\text{Rosaniline.}}{C_{20}H_{19}N_3} + 3H_2O.$$

Meta-toluidine only occurs in small quantities in commercial toluidine. It yields no red with para-toluidine.

The aniline oil containing aniline and toluidine in the proper proportions for aniline-red, is known as "red oil."

Manufacture of Magenta.

(1) *Arsenic acid method.*—100 pts. of aniline oil are heated with 125 pts. of 75 per cent. arsenic acid for eight hours, in a boiler fitted with distilling tube. The temperature must be somewhat above the boiling-point of aniline (182°). Water, and a part of the aniline, distil over. The residue is then boiled with water, and filtered from the insoluble

part. The solution contains arseniate and arsenite of rosaniline, a yellow bye-product (chrysaniline), besides excess of arsenic acid and resinous substances.

The residue consists of mauvaniline, violaniline, and some chrysaniline.

To the solution containing arsenic a large excess of common salt is added. A double decomposition takes place, rosaniline hydrochloride (magenta) and arseniate and arsenite of soda being formed. The excess of salt dissolves, and the colouring matter, being sparingly soluble in salt solution, separates out. This method of separating colouring matters by salt is much used, and is technically known as "salting out."

The separated magenta is then crystallised from water, or dissolved again, salted out, and crystallised. The mother-liquors yield an impure magenta (cerise, geranium, etc.).

(2) *Nitrobenzene process.*—Instead of using arsenic acid as an oxidising agent, nitrobenzene and ferrous chloride are employed. The latter is oxidised by the nitrobenzene, and then oxidises the aniline, so that it acts as a transmitter of oxygen. 100 pts. of aniline oil are mixed with two-thirds of the quantity of hydrochloric acid necessary to saturate them, then with 50 pts. of nitrobenzene, and heated, with gradual addition of 3 to 5 pts. of iron filings. The magenta is prepared from the crude melt, as in the arsenic-acid process. The bye products contain much *induline*, but no chrysaniline.

(3) *Mercury process.*—By oxidation of aniline with mercuric nitrate, a very pure nitrate of rosaniline is obtained, which may be converted into the hydrochloride (rubine) by double decomposition with common salt.

Properties of the Rosaniline Salts.

Commercial rosaniline contains besides para-rosaniline, but as the properties of the two are almost identical, we

shall not distinguish between them here. The salts with one molecule of acid have a metallic-green appearance in reflected light; in transmitted light, in thin layers, they are red. The solutions are crimson, and are not fluorescent.

Hydrochloride of rosaniline, magenta, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3HCl$, forms rhombic crystals, rather sparingly soluble in pure water, but easier in acidified water and in alcohol. Amylic alcohol also takes it up. It absorbs moisture, on standing in the air. With concentrated hydrochloric acid it gives brown needles of the triacid salt, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3 \cdot 3HCl$, which dissolve with a brown colour. By pouring into excess of water, the original monacid salt is produced.

Caustic alkalies, ammonia, baryta, and lime decompose magenta solutions, and separate free rosaniline in a crystalline state. Pure, freshly-prepared rosaniline is colourless.

Reducing agents, as zinc and acetic acid, stannous chloride, sulphurous acid, decolourise magenta, forming salts of leucaniline. Leucaniline is not reconverted into rosaniline by atmospheric oxygen. The reduced solutions of rosaniline remain colourless. (Distinction from Magdala-red and safranine.)

Aldehyde and alcoholic shellac solution convert magenta into blue colouring matters.

Strong oxidising agents (chlorine, chloride of lime, permanganate of potash) decolourise magenta solutions. Limited oxidation produces a new colouring matter.

A yellowish-red colouring matter, aniline-scarlet, is obtained by the action of hydrogen peroxide or nitrate of lead on magenta. Chromic acid gives a brown colouring matter.

Thus rosaniline shows some resemblance to aniline in its reactions with oxidising agents. The reason of this is, that the amido groups of aniline and toluidine are contained in it in an unaltered state.

Nitrate of rosaniline, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3 \cdot HNO_3$, is sometimes prepared on a small scale by the mercury process, and occurs

in commerce as a very pure colouring matter known as azaleïne.

Acetate of rosaniline, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3 \cdot C_2H_4O_2$, is the most soluble rosaniline salt. It forms large green crystals, which after some time become brownish-red.

Chromate of rosaniline is a brick-red powder, nearly insoluble in water.

Dilute magenta solutions give a red precipitate with *tannic acid.*

Commercial magenta.—Pure magenta should consist only of the salts of rosaniline and para-rosaniline. Commercial magenta generally contains water, mineral impurities, resinous substances, and if prepared by the arsenic-acid process, more or less arsenic (up to 6·5 per cent.).

The purest qualities are the blue shades. The yellow ones contain a yellow colouring matter, phosphine. Magenta prepared by the nitrobenzene process contains no phosphine.

Aniline-red is sold under many different names, as magenta, azaleïne, roseïne, fuchsine, new red, rubine, etc.

Magenta-violet, fuchsine V, is a mixture of magenta and mauvaniline hydrochloride.

Cerise is a colouring matter containing magenta, which is used in dyeing browns. The mother-liquors on salting out magenta, contain magenta, phosphine, and a brown colouring matter. They are precipitated with milk of lime; the precipitate is dissolved in acidified water, and salted out. It forms an amorphous brown mass, with a vitreous fracture.

Cardinal, amaranth, are names applied to mixtures of colouring matters of which the chief constituent is magenta.

Testing of magenta.—Good magentas are always well crystallised, and dissolve in pure water without leaving any residue. The testing of magenta by comparative dye-trials, as well as the testing for adulteration and impurities, has already been referred to in the general part.

A solution of pure magenta is entirely decolourised by sulphurous acid, while impure samples remain yellow or brown.

For the qualitative estimation of arsenic in magenta from the arsenic-acid process, Marsh's test is used.

In order to estimate arsenic quantitatively the magenta is fused with soda and nitre, dissolved in water, filtered, the arsenic precipitated with magnesia mixture, and the precipitate weighed as magnesium ammonium arseniate.

Application of magenta.—Silk and wool are dyed in neutral baths, silk may also be dyed in a bath containing boiled-off liquor. In brightening silk, the shades become slightly bluer.

In the preparation of magenta for printing, it must be remembered that by warming with many organic bodies, a violet is produced. Such substances are impure spirit, shellac, some gums, tannin, and fats.

Cotton is seldom dyed with magenta; now and then it is printed. The colouring matters of this group are easily affected by light.

Fibres dyed with magenta give up part of their colour to boiling water, while soap removes it completely.

In calico-printing, magenta is used for the production of a brown colour (magenta-puce). Suitably thickened magenta is printed, and passed through a hot bath containing bichromate of potash and sulphuric acid, a process which resembles the production of aniline-black on cotton yarn. Magenta-puce is also obtained, if, in the receipts for printing aniline-black, the aniline salt is replaced by magenta,—that is, a mixture of magenta, chlorate of soda, and copper sulphide are printed and steamed. This process is, however, not used on a large scale.

Detection on the fibre.—The decolouration with acids (formation of triacid salts), with alkalies (separation of free rosaniline), and with sodium sulphide (reduction to leucaniline), are characteristic. When dyed along with vegetable colouring matters, the detection is easy.

An alcoholic extract is made, which is described below.

Detection of magenta in food, &c.—Chemically pure magenta, and that which is prepared without arsenic acid, is not poisonous. The use of magenta for colouring articles of food, toys, and confectionery, is nevertheless forbidden in some countries.

In late years, magenta has been largely used for colouring wines, and many methods have been proposed for distinguishing between magenta and the natural colouring matter of wine, and also for the recognition of other artificial and natural colouring matters used for colouring wines.

Romei bases his process for the detection of magenta in coloured liquids, upon its solubility in amylic alcohol. 50 c.c. of the wine are warmed with 10 c.c. of lead acetate solution, sp. gr. 1·32, in order to remove the natural colouring matters. To the filtered solution, 1 drop of acetic acid and 10 c.c. of amylic alcohol are added, when the whole is well agitated. If the wine is pure, the amylic alcohol will remain colourless. If magenta is present, it is coloured red; rosolic acid yields a yellow, and orchil a red-violet. The layer of amylic alcohol is removed, and shaken with dilute ammonia. If a red-violet colour is formed, rosolic acid is present; a blue-violet colouration indicates orchil, and a decolouration indicates magenta.

Brunner's method is to stir the warmed wine with stearic acid. On cooling, the stearic acid is violet in presence of magenta. *Falière's* method is also easy to carry out. The wine is treated with caustic baryta or ammonia, when the rosaniline is liberated. The liquid is then shaken with ether, and a piece of silk or wool placed in the ethereal solution. When the ether has evaporated, the red colour on the fibre is developed with acetic acid, and the fibre is tested for magenta in the usual manner.

From some red wines, magenta separates along with the

natural red colouring matter (oenolin) on the sides of the vessel. *Cotton* collects this precipitate, treats it with water, adds ammonia, and shakes with ether, etc.

Preserved fruits and confectionery give red-coloured solutions with water, and the aqueous solution is tested according to the method adopted for the red wines.

Acid Magenta, Magenta S, Rubine S.

A mixture of the mono and disulphonic acids of rosaniline is obtained by heating dried rosaniline with fuming sulphuric acid to 100°—170°. The product is poured into water, and neutralised with milk of lime. After filtering from the gypsum, the lime salts are decomposed with soda. The carbonate of lime is removed by filtration, and the soda salts are evaporated to dryness. The normal soda salt is hygroscopic, and is converted by hydrochloric acid into the acid salt.

Acid magenta forms a green metallic-looking powder, easily soluble in water, with a red colour. The solution is decolourised by alkalies, but no precipitate is formed. Dilute acids (also carbonic acid) reproduce the colour. The colour of the solution is only slightly altered by acids. Acid magenta is about half as strong, in dyeing, as ordinary magenta; but it can be dyed from strong acid baths, and may therefore be combined with other acid dyes and mordants. Thus it gives good results with indigo extract, Helvetia-green, and acid yellow.

On the fibre, acid magenta may be distinguished from magenta by its behaviour towards a mixture of equal parts of water and hydrochloric acid. Magenta is decolourised, acid magenta is unaltered, but the solution takes up some of the colour, and becomes cherry-red.

Magenta S has latterly been used for colouring wines. It cannot be detected in the same manner as magenta, as it is insoluble in ether, and does not unite with stearic acid.

Aniline-blue.

(1.) *Spirit soluble Blue.*

If the hydrogen atoms of the amido groups of magenta are replaced by organic radicals, the colour becomes violet or blue. The shade is bluer, the more hydrogen atoms are replaced in this manner. The ethyl derivatives are the reddest, then come the salts of the methyl and benzyl rosaniline, and the purest blue is the hydrochloride of triphenylrosaniline.*

Blue from rosaniline.—In order to prepare commercial spirit-blue, rosaniline (prepared from the purest bluish-magenta, by precipitation with ammonia or lime) is heated with a large excess of aniline (ten times the quantity) and some benzoic acid. The operation takes place in a distilling vessel. The temperature is the boiling-point of aniline, the excess of which distils over, along with ammonia water.

When a small test taken out shows that the action is finished, the whole is cooled to 60°, and saturated with hydrochloric acid. The blue separates, and the aniline hydrochloride dissolves. The precipitate is well washed with dilute hydrochloric acid, and then with water, dried and powdered, and sold as spirit-blue.

The formation of the blue base is shown in the following equation :—

$$\underset{\text{Rosaniline.}}{C_{20}H_{19}N_3} + 3\underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5\cdot NH_2} = \underset{\text{Triphenylrosaniline.}}{C_{20}H_{16}(C_6H_5)_3N_3} + 3NH_3.$$

The part which benzoic acid plays in the manufacture is not known ; but it is necessary, in order to obtain good results, to add a monobasic acid, such as stearic or benzoic acid.

* According to private information, a hexaphenylrosaniline has lately been obtained which yields in dyeing a purer blue than any other colouring matter known. Its preparation is, however, as yet so expensive that the colouring matter has not made its appearance in the market.

Spirit-blue is further purified by dissolving in aniline, and precipitating with hydrochloric acid, or by other methods. This finer product is known as basic-blue or opal-blue.

The less pure products have a reddish shade, which is especially noticeable in artificial light. The best qualities give colours which appear pure blue by gas- or lamp-light, and are sometimes sold as light blue (bleu lumière). They are also distinguished as spirit-blue 5B or 6B, the direct blue as B, while the intermediate products are known as 2B, 3B, 4B, according to their purity.

A blue with a decided red tone is obtained when magenta is used instead of rosaniline, and acetate of soda instead of benzoic acid, in the manufacture. Spirit-blue R, or Parma-blue, is an intermediate product between the spirit-blues and the spirit-violets.

Spirit soluble Diphenylamine-blue.

Aniline-blue may also be prepared from diphenylamine. Diphenylamine, $C_{12}H_{11}N$, is a crystalline body, possessing an agreeable smell. It melts at 54° and boils at 310°. It dissolves easily in alcohol and ether, sparingly in water. It is a weak base.

In order to prepare it, equal molecules of aniline and aniline hydrochloride are heated to 250°.

$$C_6H_5NH_2 + C_6H_5NH_2\cdot HCl = \begin{matrix} C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_5 \end{matrix}\!\!>\!NH\cdot HCl + NH_3.$$

Aniline. Aniline hydrochloride. Diphenylamine-hydrochloride.

Diphenylamine forms a blue colouring matter when heated with oxalic acid to 120°—130°.

$$3(C_6H_5)_2NH + C_2H_2O_4 = CO + 3H_2O + C_{19}H_{14}(C_6H_5)_3N_3.$$

Diphenylamine. Oxalic acid. Diphenylamine-blue.

The excess of oxalic acid is removed by washing with water, unaltered diphenylamine by boiling with benzene,

when the residue is transformed into the hydrochloride and purified in the usual manner.

Diphenylamine-blue is of a finer quality, but at the same time more expensive than rosaniline-blue.

The chemical constitution of these two dye-stuffs is not identical. The rosaniline-blue is a derivative of commercial rosaniline, which consists chiefly of rosaniline, $C_{20}H_{19}N_3$. On the other hand, diphenylamine-blue is the hydrochloride of triphenylated para-rosaniline, and has the formula :

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot N\begin{matrix}-C_6H_5\\-H\end{matrix} \\ C_6H_4\cdot N\begin{matrix}-C_6H_5\\-H\end{matrix} \\ C_6H_4\cdot N- C_6H_5\cdot HCl. \end{cases}$$

Methyl- and ethyl-blue.—The above constitutional formula of diphenylamine-blue shows that it still contains two replaceable hydrogen atoms in the amido groups.

It has hitherto not been possible to introduce more than three phenyl groups, but the hydrogen atoms are easily replaceable by ethyl and methyl, and the colouring matters produced possess a still purer tone than diphenylamine-blue. In order to produce methyl- or ethyl-blue, methyldiphenylamine or ethyldiphenylamine—

$$N\begin{cases} C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_5 \\ CH_3, \end{cases} \qquad N\begin{cases} C_6H_5 \\ C_6H_5 \\ C_2H_5, \end{cases}$$

is heated with oxalic acid. These bases are produced by the action of methyl or ethyl alcohol on diphenylamine hydrochloride :—

$$(C_6H_5)_2NH\cdot HCl + CH_3OH = (C_6H_5)_2N\cdot CH_3\cdot HCl + H_2O.$$

Or the colouring matters may be prepared by the action of methyl or ethyl chloride on diphenylamine-blue.

The purest aniline-blue is obtained by melting methyl-

diphenylamine on a water-bath, with chloranil ($C_6Cl_4O_2$)' and then heating to 130°. The cooled mass is powdered, washed with hydrochloric acid, dissolved in alcohol and precipitated with water.

The chloranil used in this process is obtained by the action of hydrochloric acid and chlorate of potash on phenol. In the pure state it forms golden leaflets, insoluble in water. It sublimes at 150°. It is a tetrachlor derivative of quinon, $C_6H_4H_2$. Its oxidising property depends on the fact that it readily takes up hydrogen, like quinon itself, and is converted into tetrachlorohydroquinone ·—

$$C_6Cl_4 \begin{matrix} - O \\ - O \end{matrix} \diagup\!\diagdown + H_2 = C_6Cl_4 \begin{matrix} - OH \\ - OH. \end{matrix}$$

Chloranil. Tetrachlorohydroquinon.

Commercial chloranil contains besides trichloroquinon, which is, however, as powerful an oxidising agent as chloranil.

Properties of aniline blue.—The hydrochloride of triphenylrosaniline is a brownish powder, which becomes pure blue at 100°. It is insoluble in water, but dissolves in boiling alcohol with a beautiful blue colour.

The acetate is more easily soluble in alcohol, and sometimes occurs in commerce in a state of solution.

Hydrochloric acid, nitric acid, and stannous chloride give blue precipitates in an alcoholic solution of aniline-blue. Caustic soda and ammonia give violet-blue precipitates, and at the boil, colourless solutions. If water is added to these solutions, free triphenylrosaniline, $C_{20}H_{17}(C_6H_5)_3N_3 \cdot OH$, is thrown down as a white precipitate, which rapidly becomes blue in the air.

Application.—The greatest part of the spirit-blue made is used in the manufacture of soluble blue.

The finest qualities, as spirit-blue 5B and 6B, diphenylamine-blue, methyl- and ethyl-blue, are used in silk-dyeing for producing light and very pure shades, which cannot be obtained with soluble blue. The colouring matter is

dissolved in 40 to 50 parts of methylated spirits, filtered, and dyed in a bath containing boiled-off liquor.

In wool-dyeing, spirit-blue is used for producing bright blues which have to stand milling. It is dyed in a bath containing alum or sulphuric acid. Brighter shades can be obtained by the addition of a little stannic chloride.

(2.) *Soluble-blue.*

Spirit-blue, on being heated with sulphuric acid, is easily transformed into sulphonic acids, some of which are soluble in water in the free state, others as their alkali salts.

Diphenylamine-blue soluble in water may be obtained direct, by heating diphenylamine sulphonic acid—

$$N\begin{cases} C_6H_4 \cdot SO_3H \\ C_6H_5 \\ H \end{cases}$$

with oxalic acid.

The first blue soluble in water was prepared by Nicholson in 1862, and was called, after him, "Nicholson's Blue."

The more sulpho groups are introduced into triphenylrosaniline, the more easily soluble the products become; but their fastness decreases in the same proportion, both as regards the action of light and air, soap and alkalies. The higher sulphonic acids, such as rosaniline tetrasulphonic acid, $C_{38}H_{27}N_3(SO_3H)_4$, are therefore never prepared.

Whether the hydrogen atoms of the phenylene (C_6H_4) or of the phenyl (C_6H_5) are replaced by the sulphonic acid group, is not certain.

The sulphonic acids are distinguished as follows:—

The monosulphonic acid is insoluble in pure or acidified water; its alkali salts dissolve with light brown colour, the solution becomes red-brown, when heated with an excess of alkali.

The disulphonic acid is soluble in water, but insoluble

in water containing sulphuric acid. The solution in excess of alkali is yellow.

The trisulphonic acid dissolves both in pure water and in water containing sulphuric acid. Its alkaline solution is colourless with excess of alkali.

Alkali blue.

Alkali blue is the soda-salt of the monosulphonic acid. It is obtained by treating spirit-blue with sulphuric acid at 30° to 35° C., and pouring the resulting brown-yellow solution into water. The precipitate is collected, washed, and dissolved in the required (calculated) quantity of soda. The dye-stuff is then salted out, or evaporated to dryness, with addition of a little carbonate of ammonia.

Properties. — Alkali blue comes into commerce as a brownish powder, or in lumps. It should dissolve without residue in about 5 parts of water.

By acidifying with acetic acid, the liquid is coloured blue; and on boiling, the free sulphonic acid separates as a blue precipitate.

By acidifying with hydrochloric acid, the free acid is completely precipitated; and the solution is rendered colourless when pure alkali blue is present; but if the di- and tri-sulphonic acids are present, the solution remains coloured. If the test sample gives off carbonic acid on acidifying, it most likely contains soda.

Concentrated soda solution colours the solution red-violet; on boiling, red-brown. Excess of ammonia decolourises the solution. Stannous chloride produces a blue precipitate.

Application. — Alkali blue is generally dyed from a feebly alkaline solution. It is not used in cotton-dyeing, as it will not combine with acid mordants; but it is used very extensively for bright blue shades on silk and wool.

The dye-bath must be made perfectly free from lime-salts, as the lime-salt of the sulphonic acid is insoluble in water. Calcareous water can be made suitable by boiling with a small quantity of tin-salt. The dyeing is effected nearly at a boil, borax, soluble glass, soda or stannate of soda being added to the dye-bath, which render the dye more even and faster.

Alkali blue is taken up by the fibre as an almost colourless soda salt. In order to develop the colour, i.e. separate the free sulphonic acid, the material is passed after dyeing through a weak acid bath ("developing"). The dyes are made faster to milling by employing alumina or tin-salts as mordants. Alkali blue is little used for producing mixed colours, as it requires this peculiar treatment in dyeing, which is essentially different to the application of most other colouring matters.

Soluble blue, Water-blue, Cotton-blue.

Spirit-blue is heated with 3 to 4 parts of sulphuric acid to 60° for a length of time, and finally the temperature is raised to 100°—110°. After cooling, the product is mixed with three or four times the quantity of water, to precipitate the colouring matter. It is then filtered off, dissolved in a large quantity of boiling water, and the excess of sulphuric acid removed by cautious addition of milk of lime. The calcium sulphate is filtered off, and the filtrate mixed with soda or carbonate of ammonium, and evaporated to dryness.

Water-blue contains principally salts of triphenylrosaniline trisulphonic acid, $C_{38}H_{28}N_3(SO_3H)_3$. The ammonia-salt forms a mass with a coppery lustre, or a granular powder ; the soda-salt generally occurs as dark blue irregular lumps.

China-blue is a name given to a very porous water-blue, which is obtained by adding to a very concentrated and slightly acidulated solution of water-blue, carbonate of

ammonia. The reactions of water-blue are similar to those of alkali blue. The colouring matter is not precipitated by acids. Caustic soda decolourises the solution.

Application.—Water-blue is principally used in cotton dyeing. It is either fixed by means of tannin, or by oil mordants, along with alum, tartar emetic, or tin-salts.

This dye-stuff further serves for producing compound colours on wool and silk; it possesses the advantage over alkali blue that it may be dyed from acid baths, and may thus be combined with many other colouring matters. For pure blue on wool and silk it is never used, as it is not so fast and not so productive as alkali blue.

Detection of aniline-blue on the fibre.—Concentrated sulphuric acid decolourises. Water-blue gives a blue solution. Hydrochloric acid nearly decolourises spirit-blue and alkali blue.

Spirit-blue first becomes light blue and is then gradually decolourised by ammonia, while alkali- and water-blue disappear immediately.

Caustic soda turns spirit-blue to a grey-violet; alkali blue to a yellow-brown; and water-blue to a red-brown.

Stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid decolourise spirit-blue and alkali blue gradually, and remove water-blue with a pure blue colour.

Alcohol strips spirit and alkali blue even in the cold, while water-blue is not taken up even at a boil.

Phenyl-violet. Spirit-violet.

If the manufacture of aniline-blue is altered, so that less aniline is used, and the mixture heated for a shorter period, a mixture of mono- and a diphenylrosaniline is obtained, which contains very little triphenylrosaniline, and which when combined with hydrochloric acid, is used in small quantities as "spirit-violet."

It does not give as bright colours as methyl-violet, but

they stand milling better, and therefore find some application in wool-dyeing.

Detection on the fibre.—Alcohol removes the colour, ammonia decolourises, caustic soda turns brown. Its behaviour towards stannous chloride serves to distinguish it from other violets. It is removed with a blue colour, and is only decolourised very slowly.

Hofmann's Violet.

(Dahlia, Primula, etc.)

The Hofmann's violets consist of various ethyl and methyl derivatives of rosaniline.

For their preparation, an alcoholic solution of rosaniline is treated with methyl or ethyl iodide and caustic soda.

The quantity of iodide used depends upon the shade required; for red shades it is least, and for pure violet greatest. At most three methyl or ethyl groups may be introduced in this manner, according to the equation—

$$\underset{\text{Rosaniline.}}{C_{20}H_{21}N_3O} + 3CH_3I + 3NaHo =$$

$$\underset{\text{Trimethylrosaniline.}}{C_{20}H_{18}(CH_3)_3ON_3} + 3NaI + 3H_2O.$$

The ethyl derivatives are redder than those of methyl.

The salt used in dyeing is the hydrochloride. It yields, when carefully prepared, a very pure, reddish violet.

The application of this dye is very limited, as it has been almost completely replaced by methyl-violet.

Methyl-violet. Paris-violet.

Preparation.—This violet is produced by direct oxidation of the purest dimethylaniline, $C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2$, (free from methyl toluidine), with copper chloride.

The copper chloride is prepared by double decomposition of nitrate or sulphate of copper with common salt. The solution is mixed with a large quantity of common salt, and dimethylaniline and acetic acid poured in. The

mass is moulded into cakes, and dried at 40° to 50°, when it assumes a green metallic appearance. It is then extracted with a quantity of boiling water, insufficient to dissolve all the salt. The violet is insoluble in the salt solution, and therefore remains behind.

The residue is dissolved in water and the copper precipitated by sulphuretted hydrogen. The copper sulphide is removed by filtration, when the colouring matter is salted out, and is purified by re-dissolving in water and salting out again; the product is then either crystallised or converted into the zinc double salt.

In place of the large quantity of salt used to modify the action of the copper chloride on dimethylaniline, sand may be conveniently substituted. To remove the copper, gaseous sulphuretted hydrogen, or sodium sulphide, is used.

A colouring matter known as *chloranil-violet*, which is probably identical with methyl-violet, is obtained by the oxidation of dimethylaniline with chloranil. (See p. 100.)

The base contained in methyl-violet is pentamethylpararosaniline—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot N\cdot(CH_3)_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot N\cdot(CH_3)_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot N\cdot CH_3. \end{cases}$$

Its formation is expressed by Caro and Graebe in the equation—

$$3\,C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2 + 3\,O = 3\,H_2O + C_{19}H_{12}(CH_3)_5N_3.$$

Dimethylaniline. Pentamethylpararosaniline.

It is distinguished from Hofmann's violet in its chemical constitution, being a pentamethylated pararosaniline, while Hofmann's violet is only trimethylated rosaniline.

Properties.—Methyl-violet (mark B) comes into commerce as a hydrochloride, $C_{19}H_{12}(CH_3)_5N_3\cdot HCl$, or as a zinc double salt. The latter forms small crystals, while the first either consists of a powder, or of irregular lumps.

Methyl-violet has a green metallic reflex ; it is easily soluble in water and alcohol.

Dilute solutions are turned pure blue by very little hydrochloric acid ; more acid makes them dichroïc. Thin layers are then green, while thicker ones are much less transparent, and of a red colour. An excess of acid turns the solution yellow, owing to the formation of acid salts. Ammonia produces a lilac-coloured precipitate, and caustic soda a brown-violet one, the solution becoming colourless on boiling.

Chromic acid gives a dirty violet precipitate, chloride of lime decolourises, and stannous chloride gives a blue-violet precipitate, becoming lighter on boiling.

For dyeing, 1 part of colour is dissolved in 50 to 100 parts of water, and the solution filtered. Silk is dyed in a bath of acidulated "boiled-off liquor." The shades may be brightened by tartaric acid or very little sulphuric acid. Cotton is dyed by the tannin and tartar-emetic process.

Methyl-violet is also used in calico-printing. It is fixed by albumen, glycerin and arsenic or some form of tannin. It is also used for topping goods dyed with iron mordants and alizarin, in order to brighten and beautify the fast violet produced.

Detection on the fibre.—Methyl-violet is gradually removed from the textile fibres by boiling with water. Hydrochloric acid removes part of the colour ; the fibre is coloured greenish yellow, but the original colour is restored on washing with water. Ammonia decolourises, caustic soda turns it red-violet and gradually decolourises it. A mixture of stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid gives a greenish yellow to yellow colour.

Benzyl-rosaniline-violet.

(Methyl-violet 6B.)

On heating methyl-violet with benzyl chloride, $C_6H_5CH_2Cl$, alcohol, and soda or lime, in a vessel with

an upright condenser, part of the methyl groups are replaced by benzyl, C_7H_7, and a series of bases is formed, of which the first members are—

$$C_{19}H_{13}(CH_3)_4(C_7H_7)N_3OH$$

and

$$C_{19}H_{13}(CH_3)_3(C_7H_7)_2N_3OH.$$

The excess of alcohol and benzyl chloride is distilled off, and the colouring matter is purified in the usual manner, by salting out, etc.

It comes into commerce as the hydrochloride or the zinc double salt. The highest benzylated product is marked 6B, and between it and methyl-violet are 2B, 3B, 4B, 5B, produced by mixing the brand B and 6B.

Benzyl-violet is very similar in its reactions to methyl-violet. It gives somewhat bluer colours.

Detection on the fibre.—Treated with caustic potash ley, methyl-violet becomes red-violet; benzyl-violet, light blue. Both are decolourised on standing.

Crystal-violet.

This colouring matter is the hydrochloride of hexamethylpararosaniline—

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2\\C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2\\C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2\\Cl.\end{cases}$$

It may be obtained by the action of perchlormethyl formiate or dimethylaniline in presence of aluminium chloride. It is also formed according to another method by the action of carbon oxychloride $COCl_2$ or dimethylaniline:—

$$3\,C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2 + 2\,COCl_2 =$$

Dimethylaniline.

$$CCl[C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2]_3 + 3HCl + CO_2.$$

Crystal-violet.

It occurs in the form of well-defined crystals which

possess a peculiar greenish brown metallic reflex. They dissolve in water and alcohol with a deep violet-blue colour, and crystallise easily from the former, but not from the latter solution. Heated to 100°, they become brown and are slightly decomposed. The leuco-base has the formula $C_{25}H_{21}N_3$ and melts at 173°.

The colouring matter yields in dyeing a very blue shade of violet; otherwise it resembles ordinary methyl-violet not only in its application, but also in its reactions.

Methyl-green.

Preparation.—Green colouring matters are formed when methyl- and ethyl-rosanilines are heated with excess of methyl chloride, or iodide, or ethyl chloride and iodide.

A similar dye was formerly prepared by the action of methyl iodide on Hofmann's violet, and was known as iodine-green. It is now replaced by methyl-green, which is prepared from methyl chloride and methyl-violet. Methyl-violet is dissolved in alcohol, and the free base precipitated in a state of fine division, by caustic soda or baryta. The base is mixed with methyl-chloride, and heated some hours to 60°—70° in horizontal, closed cylinders. The mass is poured into water, the unaltered violet base * filtered off, and the filtrate neutralised with hydrochloric acid. By the addition of a very small quantity of salt solution a further quantity of methyl-violet is precipitated. The green dye is then precipitated with salt or zinc chloride, and the precipitate purified by boiling with alcohol. Methyl-green is formed by the addition of methyl-chloride to methyl-violet, as is expressed by the equation—

$$\underset{\text{Methyl-violet.}}{C_{19}H_{12}(CH_3)_5N_3\cdot HCl} + \underset{\text{Methyl-chloride.}}{CH_3Cl} =$$

$$\underset{\text{Methyl-green.}}{C_{19}H_{12}(CH_3)_5N_3CH_3ClHCl.}$$

* The green base is soluble in water.

Accordingly, it possesses the constitution—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot N^{v}\cdot(CH_3)_2\cdot CH_3Cl \\ C_6H_4\cdot N\cdot(CH_3)_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot N\cdot CH_3HCl. \end{cases}$$

Properties.—Methyl-green comes into commerce as the zinc double salt, in small crystals. The salt—

$$C_{19}H_{12}(CH_3)_5\cdot N_3\cdot CH_3Cl\cdot HCl + ZnCl_2 + H_2O,$$

forms green needles; a salt containing more zinc forms large coppery prisms. Another variety occurs in the form of a light green powder.

All the varieties dissolve in water and alcohol, with a green colour, but they are insoluble in amylic alcohol. (Distinction from benzaldehyde-green.)

Hydrochloric acid colours the solution greenish yellow, a triacid salt being formed. On diluting with water the original colour is produced. Stannous chloride gradually decolourises, and chloride of lime destroys the colour.

The behaviour of methyl-green towards alkalies requires a short explanation. The constitutional formula shows it to be the chlormethylate of a tertiary base, containing a pentatomic nitrogen atom, N^{v}, which is combined with phenylene, C_6H_4, three methyl groups, CH_3, and one chlorine. The simplest example of this class of bodies is tetramethylammonium chloride—

$$N\begin{cases} CH_3 \\ CH_3 \\ CH_3 \\ CH_3 \\ Cl, \end{cases}$$

which is not decomposed by alkalies, but which gives up its chlorine to moist silver oxide. A strong base, soluble in water, is thus formed:—

$$2\left(N\begin{cases}(CH_3)_4\\ Cl\end{cases}\right) + Ag_2O + H_2O = 2\left(N\begin{cases}(CH_3)_4\\ OH\end{cases}\right) + 2AgCl.$$

Tetramethylammonium chloride. — Tetramethylammonium hydrate.

By decomposing methyl-green solution with dilute alkalies, a reddish solution is produced, which on dilution becomes colourless. Concentrated alkalies produce a resinous precipitate, containing chlorine, which is soluble in pure water. This compound is the base corresponding to rosaniline :—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4N\cdot(CH_3)_3Cl \\ C_6H_4N\cdot(CH_3)_2 \\ C_6H_4N\cdot CH_3.H \\ OH. \end{cases}$$

When its aqueous solution is treated with silver oxide, the chlorine is removed, and the easily soluble ammonium base is produced :—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot N\cdot(CH_3)_3OH \\ C_6H_4\cdot N\cdot(CH_3)_2 \\ C_6H_4\cdot N\cdot(CH_3)H \\ OH. \end{cases}$$

By heating methyl-green to 100°, methyl chloride is gradually given off, the decomposition being very rapid at 130°. Methyl-violet remains behind :—

$$\underset{\text{Green.}}{C_{19}H_{12}(CH_3)_5N_3\cdot CH_3Cl\cdot HCl} = \underset{\text{Violet.}}{C_{19}H_{12}(CH_3)_5\cdot N_3\cdot HCl} + \underset{\text{Methylchloride.}}{CH_3Cl.}$$

Picric acid, $C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH$, produces in solutions of methyl-green a dark green, crystalline precipitate, which contains no chlorine.

The picrate of methyl-green is nearly insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol. It is sometimes sold as "spirit-soluble green." Methyl-green is easily distinguished from other dye-stuffs by the above reactions.

In order to test the value of methyl-green, a dye-trial and an estimation of the ash are made. The sample should be entirely soluble in water, with a blue-green colour. If a green residue remains, it may consist of the

picrate, which, however, dissolves completely in alcohol or dilute soda solution.

If the picrate contains excess of picric acid, this is easily detected by a dye-trial. A skein of silk or wool is placed in the solution, and removed. A second skein placed in the same solution is dyed yellow, if excess of picric acid is present.

If the aqueous solution of methyl-green gives a precipitate with alkalies, the presence of methyl-violet is indicated, owing to defective purification. The precipitate is filtered off, and the colour of its solution in hydrochloric acid is noticed.

An adulteration with soluble blue is recognised by adding a saturated solution of picric acid. The green is completely precipitated, and the liquid acquires a greenish tinge in presence of aniline-blue. In extreme cases it may be bluish green, indicating the presence of large quantities of aniline-blue.

Methyl-green should be entirely soluble in boiling alcohol. Frequently a residue remains of a greenish-white powder, which is also, like methyl-green, turned violet on being heated to 130°. It is the chloride of nona-methyl, para-leukaniline :—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot N^{V}(CH_3)_3Cl \\ C_6H_4\cdot N^{V}(CH_3)_3Cl \\ C_6H_4\cdot N^{V}(CH_3)_3Cl \\ H. \end{cases}$$

It is often formed, as a bye-product, in considerable quantities. In purifying methyl-green with alcohol, on a large scale, it is left behind; and when dried and powdered, often serves for adulterating methyl-green. It is easily soluble in water, and is therefore not detected in the ordinary use of the dye-stuff.

Application.—In dyeing with methyl-green, the dye-bath should never reach the boil, as some violet is likely to be produced, and this would deteriorate the desired colour.

This decomposition takes place still more readily in presence of mineral acids. For the same reason, goods printed with methyl-green should not be steamed for a long time.

Silk is dyed in a lukewarm bath containing boiled-oft liquor. In brightening, tartaric or acetic acid is used. If a yellower tone is required, picric acid is added to the brightening bath.

An aqueous, warm solution of methyl-green does not dye wool well, only bluish-grey shades being produced. Better results are obtained when the dyeing is done in an alkaline bath, and the colour is subsequently developed with acid. Another method is to fix with tannin.

But the best results are obtained when the wool is mordanted with sulphur, according to Lauth's process. For this purpose, the wool is first warmed with hyposulphite of soda, and then hydrochloric acid, or alum and sulphuric acid, is added. It is then well washed and dyed with methyl-green. Acetate of zinc is frequently added to the dye-bath, and this is especially necessary when picric acid has been added for the production of a yellower shade. The zinc salt is gradually decomposed by the sulphur contained in the wool, zinc sulphide being formed; and this is as good a mordant for methyl-green as free sulphur. A little of the methyl-green is taken up by the fibre, the acetic acid produced by the action of the sulphur on the zinc acetate fixes a quantity of picric acid, and then a little acetate of soda is added, and the methyl-green is all fixed. For wool-dyeing, methyl-green has been almost entirely replaced by acid-green and benzaldehyde-green, as these dyes require no mordant, are not altered by heat, and they serve better for compound colours. Cotton is mordanted by the tannin process.

Detection on the fibre.—The reaction on heating is very characteristic for methyl-green. A bit of the material is heated a little above 100°, when it becomes violet if dyed with methyl-green.

The following reactions also serve for its detection:—Excess of hydrochloric acid colours the fibre yellow; on washing with water, the original colour is reproduced. Stannous chloride, ammonia, and soda-ley decolourise. Acetic acid or alcohol remove the colour, yielding blue-green solutions.

Other Colouring Matters of the Rosaniline Group.

In addition to the blue colouring matters described above, there are others, which are not derivatives of triphenyl-methane, (indeed their constitution is not entirely known,) but which sufficiently resemble them in properties and preparation to be referred to in this place.

We shall first describe two bye-products obtained in the manufacture of magenta, the yellow phosphine and the brown maroon.

Phosphine (Aniline-orange).

Preparation.—In the manufacture of phosphine, the resinous bye-products obtained in the manufacture of magenta by the arsenic acid process are used. These contain, as has already been mentioned, violaniline, mauvaniline and chrysaniline, a little rosaniline, and bodies of a resinous character.

To separate these, a very tedious process has to be adopted. It consists in first boiling the mass with dilute hydrochloric acid. The violaniline and resins remain insoluble. By fractional precipitation, first the mauv-aniline, then the rosaniline, and finally chrysaniline, are thrown down. Phosphine is the hydrochloride of chrys-aniline.

Another source of chrysaniline are the arsenical mother-liquors which remain after precipitating the magenta with salt. Salt and lime are added to these, the precipi-tate is dissolved in nitric acid, and the sparingly soluble

nitrate of chrysaniline precipitated with excess of nitric acid, and then converted into the hydrochloride.

A base of higher molecular weight, corresponding to chrysaniline, is obtained by heating arseniate of toluidine to 130°—150°, and is known as chrysotoluidine.

Properties.—Phosphine, $C_{20}H_{17}N_3HCl$, is the hydrochloride of chrysaniline, $C_{20}H_{17}N_3$. It comes into commerce as a yellow or orange powder, easily soluble in water and alcohol.

If concentrated hydrochloric acid is added to an aqueous solution of phosphine, a precipitate of the diacid salt is produced, which is easily soluble in water.

The reaction of phosphine solutions with nitrates is especially characteristic. If a solution of saltpetre containing 1 part per 100 is added, a red crystalline precipitate of nitrate of chrysaniline is immediately produced. In warm solutions, the precipitate is only produced on standing; under the microscope it is seen to consist of needles.

In solutions of phosphine, ammonia and caustic alkalies precipitate chrysaniline, $C_{20}H_{17}N_3 \cdot H_2O$, as an amorphous yellow powder, soluble in alcohol and ether.

Phosphine is easily reduced by stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid, but the colour is quickly reproduced on exposure to air. This reaction is useful in the detection of phosphine.

Application.—Phosphine is not much used, but finds some application in silk- and woollen-printing.

Silk may be dyed in a pure soap bath, and the colour brightened with acetic acid. A mixture of magenta and phosphine gives a fine scarlet on silk. In wool-dyeing, an addition of acid is necessary.

On cotton, mordanted with aluminium acetate (red liquor) it gives a nankin-yellow, which resists the action of soap.

Detection on the fibre.—Acids redden the colour, but on standing it is stripped. Ammonia turns it to a

greenish yellow, which is lighter than the original colour. Stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid decolourise it gradually.

Maroon (*Chestnut-brown*).

The resinous magenta residue is boiled with dilute hydrochloric acid, as in the manufacture of phosphine. After filtering, without further separation, all the bases are precipitated with milk of lime. After washing, the colour is sold as "maroon paste," or is neutralised with hydrochloric acid, and thus rendered soluble in water.

The various sorts of maroon give various reactions, according to the proportion of the bases contained in them. The solution of the hydrochloric acid compound in water may vary in colour from red to brown-violet. Hydrochloric acid colours it yellow to brown; ammonia produces a dark, amorphous, flocculent precipitate, the solution being nearly colourless.

The blue-violet colouring matter contained in maroon, which is the hydrochloride of mauvaniline, may be prepared by dissolving in water or dilute hydrochloric acid, and isolating by fractional precipitation with salt.

The mauvaniline salt is precipitated first, and the rosaniline and chrysaniline remain in solution. The precipitate is purified by crystallising from boiling water.

The salts of mauvaniline crystallise well, and possess a beautiful bronze reflex. They dissolve sparingly in water, with a light blue-violet colour. They are easily soluble in hot water, especially on the addition of a little acid. Alkalies and ammonia precipitate the free base, which possesses the formula $C_{19}H_{17}N_3 \cdot H_2O$. Pure mauvaniline gives beautiful and fast violet shades, but it cannot be used along with other dye-stuffs.

Maroon gives a fine chestnut-brown. Silk is dyed in a bath containing boiled-off liquor, wool in pure water. Cotton is mordanted with sumach or other tannin matter.

Mauveïn.

Violet colouring matters are obtained when aniline containing toluidine is oxidised with chloride of lime, permanganate of potash, lead peroxide, etc.

Amongst these is mauveïn, the first aniline dye introduced into commerce, which was discovered by *Perkin* in 1856. He obtained it by the oxidation of aniline oil with chromic acid. It is not used in dyeing at the present day.

Aldehyde-green.

This colouring matter is prepared by mixing a solution of rosaniline in sulphuric acid with aldehyde, and warming, till a sample dissolves in water with a beautiful green colour. It is then poured into a boiling solution of hyposulphite of soda, boiled for some time, and filtered. Silk and wool may be dyed directly in the filtrate.

Aldehyde-green is now entirely replaced by other aniline greens.

(*b*) INDULINES AND SAFRANINES.

This division of aniline dyes includes two small groups of dye-stuffs, which neither resemble each other in their relation to the fibres, nor in their chemical constitution. The only reason why they are described together is, that the representatives of the safranines as well as those of the indulines, may be obtained by the combination of the same mother substances.

If an amine, such as aniline, is allowed to act upon an amidoazo compound, as amidoazobenzene (aniline-yellow), so that a compound is formed with evolution of ammonia, an induline is formed:—

$$\underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2} + \underset{\text{Amidoazobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N{=}N\cdot C_6H_4NH_2} = NH_3 + \underset{\text{Induline.}}{C_{18}H_{15}N_3}.$$

If, however, in the place of ammonia, hydrogen is liber-

ated,—in other words, if the mixture of amine and amido-azo body is oxidised,—safranine is formed :—

$$C_6H_4\begin{cases}NH_2\\CH_3\end{cases} + CH_3\cdot C_6H_4\cdot N = N\cdot C_6H_3\begin{cases}NH_2\\CH_3\end{cases} + O =$$

O. Toluidine. Amidoazotoluene.

$$= H_2O + C_{21}H_{22}N_4.$$

Safranine.

Induline, Nigrosine.

Violaniline.—In the blue, bluish-grey, grey-violet, or black-coloured indulines and nigrosines of commerce, there are a number of colouring matters which are seldom prepared in the pure state. They are, however, all closely related to one well-studied base—violaniline.

Violaniline is formed, as has been stated on one or two previous occasions, as a bye-product in the manufacture of magenta, by the arsenic-acid or nitrobenzene process.

In order to prepare it, magenta residues are boiled with hydrochloric acid, when the violaniline hydrochloride remains insoluble, along with resinous matter. In order to remove the latter, it is dissolved in hot aniline and filtered. On cooling, pure violaniline hydrochloride is precipitated. Violaniline is formed by the oxidation of aniline free from toluidine :—

$$3C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + 3O = C_{18}H_{15}N_3 + 3H_2O.$$

Aniline. Violaniline.

It may also be obtained by a direct process, viz., by heating aniline and nitrobenzene with iron, a process greatly resembling the one used for magenta. The only differences are, that different temperature and proportions, and aniline free from toluidine, are used. If hydrochloride of aniline is heated, in alcoholic solution, with amidoazobenzene to 160°, a blue is obtained, according to the above equation, which is apparently identical with violaniline, and is known as "azodiphenyl blue."

Properties of violaniline.—The hydrochloride—

$$C_{18}H_{15}N_3HCl,$$

is an amorphous, bluish-black powder, insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol. By adding caustic alkalies to the alcoholic solution, the free base is precipitated in flakes.

Indulines and nigrosines.—Violaniline contains, like rosaniline, hydrogen atoms which are replaceable by organic radicals. Spirit-soluble induline is obtained by phenylising violaniline. The solubility in alcohol of the product obtained stands in a direct ratio to the number of phenyl groups introduced. The highest substituted product is triphenylviolaniline, $C_{18}H_{12}(C_6H_5)_3N_3$. These colouring matters may be rendered soluble in water by treating them with sulphuric acid. Coupier's blue is a sulphonic acid of violaniline prepared by the nitrobenzene process. The soluble indulines of commerce are generally mono and disulphonic acids.

The manufacturer has it in his power, by varying the proportions, etc., in the nitrobenzene process, to prepare dye-stuffs of various shades and solubility.

The addition of certain metallic salts (zinc or copper chloride, etc.) has an influence on the shades of the product. The composition of the aniline oil alters the product, toluidine producing browner shades. The temperature to which the melt is heated in the process of manufacture is 230° C. By observing certain precautions the product may be obtained directly soluble in water; others are sulphonated afterwards.

Properties.—As shown above, the indulines and nigrosines vary considerably in their composition, and consequently their reactions are not in all cases identical. The following rules, however, hold good for both :—

Hydrochloric acid produces in the blue-violet or blue solution a similarly coloured precipitate; alkalies and ammonia redden the colour, but no precipitate is formed; tin-salts give a blue precipitate; zinc powder and ammonia

decolourise the solution, especially on warming, but the original colour is rapidly restored on exposure to the air.

Indulines are sold under different names, such as Blackley-blue, Guernsey-blue, indigo substitute, etc.

Application.—Silk is dyed in a bath containing boiled-off liquor, and is afterwards brightened with acetic acid.

Wool may be dyed in the same way as with alkali-blue, viz., first in an alkaline bath, and then developed with acid. A better method is to treat the wool first with chloride of lime solution, pass it into hydrochloric acid, and then dye in a bath containing sulphuric acid. Indulines and nigrosines are very fast colours.

Detection on the fibre.—The colours resist the action of acids. Hydrochloric acid turns it, indeed, somewhat bluer, but nitric acid is almost entirely without action. Ammonia and caustic soda take up the colour, forming a red-violet solution, which is decolourised by zinc powder; the colour is restored on filtering and exposure to air. Stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid strip the colour, forming a green solution. Some nigrosines are decolourised by chloride of lime, others are coloured reddish grey.

Naphthalene-red.

(Magdala-red, rosa-naphthylamine.)

Preparation.—This beautiful dye-stuff is obtained from naphthylamine, $C_{10}H_7NH_2$, in the same manner as azodiphenyl-blue is derived from aniline. It belongs, therefore, to the class of indulines. It is prepared as follows:—

Alpha-naphthylamine is first converted into amidoazonaphthalene, $C_{10}H_7N=N\cdot C_{10}H_6\cdot NH_2$; for which purpose naphthylamine hydrochloride is dissolved in water, and mixed with a solution of caustic soda and sodium nitrite. The formation takes place according to the equation—

$$2\,C_{10}H_7\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl + NaHO + NaNO_2 =$$

Alpha-naphthylamine hydrochloride.

$$C_{10}H_7N=N\cdot C_{10}H_6\cdot NH_2 + 2\,NaCl + 3\,H_2O.$$

Amidoazonaphthalene.

The amidoazo compound separates out. In the pure state it forms beautiful red needles with a green reflex. The product is finely powdered, and mixed with the requisite quantity of a naphthylamine, and so much acetic acid, that on heating to 150°, complete solution is effected. The formation of the colouring matter resembles the formation of azodiphenyl-blue :—

$$\underset{\text{Amidoazobenzene.}}{C_6H_5 \cdot N \equiv N \cdot C_6H_4NH_2} + \underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2} = \underset{\text{Azodiphenyl-blue.}}{C_{18}H_{15}N_3} + NH_3.$$

$$\underset{\text{Amidoazonaphthalene.}}{C_{10}H_7 \cdot N \equiv N \cdot C_{10}H_6NH_2} + \underset{\text{Naphthylamine.}}{C_{10}H_7NH_2} = \underset{\text{Rosa-naphthylamine.}}{C_{30}H_{21}N_3} + NH_3.$$

The mass contains a violet colouring matter and excess of alpha-naphthylamine, and it has therefore to undergo a purification. The melt is boiled with a great excess of hydrochloric acid and filtered. The filtrate is neutralised with soda, and salt is added. Naphthalene-red being sparingly soluble in water, is precipitated, whilst the violet colour and naphthylamine remain in solution. The precipitate is purified by crystallisation from alcohol.

Properties.—Rosa-naphthylamine is the hydrochloride of a base, and has the composition $C_{30}H_{21}N_3 \cdot HCl + H_2O$. It is a dark brown crystalline powder, which may be obtained in large crystals, with a greenish reflex, by crystallisation. It is almost insoluble in boiling water, but dissolves in alcohol with a cherry-red colour, the solution showing a cinnabar-red fluorescence.

This property is the best method of recognising naph thalene-red, as it is only resembled by some resorcin derivatives, such as diazoresorufin. The latter differ, however, from naphthalene-red in their behaviour towards caustic alkalies.

Ammonia and caustic soda produce no precipitate; with soda the colour becomes violet, and the fluorescence disappears.

Dilute acids are almost without action.

Concentrated sulphuric acid dissolves it with bluish-black colour.

Zinc powder and acetic acid decolourise; the colour returns on standing in the air.

Application.—Naphthalene-red is used in silk-dyeing, especially for light shades. It gives a beautiful pink colour, with strong fluorescence, which is especially beautiful on velvet. Artificial light affects neither the colour nor the fluorescence. Darker shades are not brilliant, and may be produced better and cheaper than with other colouring matters, such as eosin, safranine, etc.

Silk may be dyed in a bath containing pure soap, or boiled-off liquor. One part of dye serves to produce a light rose colour on 1000 parts of silk. The shades may be brightened with acids (tartaric, sulphuric).

The colouring matter is not suitable for wool, and indeed, its high price would prevent it ever being used in wool-dyeing.

Detection on the fibre.—It is faster than magenta, eosin, and safranine, and is neither affected by dilute acids nor alkalies. Its fluorescence is very characteristic. Alcohol does not dissolve it from the fibre, a characteristic difference from eosin, which is readily removed.

Safranine.

Preparation.—Safranine derives its name from the French safranon (safflower). It is obtained by the oxidation of a mixture of amidoazotoluene and toluidine.

Amidoazotoluene is obtained by passing nitrous acid into aniline oil rich in ortho-toluidine ("aniline for safranine").

$$\underset{\text{Toluidine.}}{2\,C_6H_4\cdot CH_3\cdot NH_2} + HNO_2 =$$

$$C_6H_4\begin{cases}CH_3\\ N=N\end{cases}\cdot C_6H_3\begin{cases}CH_3\\ NH_2\end{cases} + 2\,H_2O.$$

Amidoazotoluene.

The product is mixed with the aniline oil, and carefully

oxidised with arsenic acid, then washed, and the oxidation completed by boiling with potassium bichromate.

$$\underset{\text{Amidoazotoluene.}}{C_7H_7\cdot N{=}N\cdot C_7H_6\cdot NH_2} + \underset{\text{Toluidine.}}{C_7H_7NH_2} + O_2 = \underset{\text{Safranine.}}{C_{21}H_{22}N_4} + H_2O.$$

The boiling solution is mixed with milk of lime, which precipitates arsenic compounds, a violet bye-product, and chromic hydrate, while the safranine remains in solution. The whole is filtered, the filtrate neutralised with hydrochloric acid, and the dye-stuff salted out. The last impurities are removed by dissolving in water and salting out again.

According to a more recent process, safranine is manufactured by the oxidation of a mixture of monamines and diamines. As in the old process, the aniline oil is converted into amidoazo compounds (amidoazobenzene and amidoazo-orthotoluene). The product is treated with zinc and hydrochloric acid, and there are formed, on the one hand, aniline and ortho-toluidine, and on the other, paraphenylenediamine, $C_6H_4(NH_2)_2$, and toluylene diamine, $C_6H_3\cdot CH_3(NH_2)_2$. For amidoazotoluene the reaction takes place according to the equation—

$$\underset{\text{Amidoazotoluene.}}{C_6H_4\begin{cases}CH_3\\ N{=}N\end{cases}} - C_6H_3\begin{cases}CH_3\\ NH_2\end{cases} + 2H_2 = \underset{\text{Toluidine.}}{C_6H_4\begin{cases}CH_3\\ NH_2\end{cases}} + \underset{\text{Toluylene diamine.}}{NH_2\cdot C_6H_3\begin{cases}CH_3\\ NH_2\end{cases}}.$$

The product of the reaction is diluted with water, one molecule of hydrochloride of toluidine added, and the whole oxidised with potassium bichromate. The base is purified as in the old process.

Properties.—Safranine comes into commerce as a brown-red powder, consisting chiefly of the hydrochloride of the base, $C_{21}H_{22}N_4$.

The pure salt forms fine, reddish crystals, soluble in water and alcohol with a red colour. The alcoholic

solution shows a beautiful yellowish fluorescence. It is insoluble in ether. Ammonia and alkalies produce no considerable change in colour, and no precipitate, the base being easily soluble in water.

To prepare the pure base, a solution of the hydrochloride is digested with silver oxide, the silver chloride filtered off, and the filtrate carefully evaporated to dryness. The residue acts very much like the hydrochloride. With picric acid, safranine forms a compound insoluble in water.

Concentrated sulphuric acid turns an aqueous solution of safranine blue, excess of strong acid turns it violet, and then green. Zinc powder and acetic acid reduce it even in the cold, leucosafranine being formed; but the solution turns red again on exposure to the air.

Constitution.—R. Nietski has recently made some very interesting experiments on the constitution of safranine. The simplest member of this group, phenosafranine, $C_{18}H_{16}N_4$, is formed by oxidation of a mixture of two molecules of aniline and one molecule of phenylene diamine, the presence of toluidine not being necessary. The formula of phenosafranine is not known with certainty, but it is probable that it contains two free amido groups, and that the leucophenosafranine obtained by reduction possesses the formula of triamidotriphenylamine :—

$$\begin{matrix} H_2N\cdot C_6H_4 \\ H_2N\cdot C_6H_4 \end{matrix} \!\!\diagdown\!\!\diagup N\cdot C_6H_4\cdot NH_2.$$

Application.—Safranine belongs to the small group of dye-stuffs which are taken up by animal fibres in alkaline solutions. Silk is dyed in a bath containing boiled-off liquor, wool in pure water.

In alkaline or neutral solutions, safranine possesses some affinity for vegetable fibres, but the colours produced are not fast. Cotton is therefore mordanted first. The best results are obtained by the use of tannin and tartar emetic.

Detection on the fibre.—Alcohol takes up the colour, forming a red solution which possesses a yellow fluorescence.

Dilute hydrochloric acid is without action, while concentrated acid colours it blue-violet. Ammonia and caustic soda remove the colour, but without much alteration. Stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid decolourise on warming.

If other monamines and diamines are oxidised, colouring matters are obtained which are closely related to safranine, and give somewhat brighter, but more fugitive colours.

As an example of these we may mention fuchsia, which is obtained by the oxidation of a boiling aqueous solution of the hydrochlorides of dimethylphenylenediamine (two molecules) and aniline (one molecule).

(*c*) ANILINE-BLACK AND NAPHTHAMEÏN.

The colouring matters of this division are formed by the oxidation of amines of the aromatic series. They are characterised by their insolubility, and little tendency to crystallise. The dye-stuffs themselves are, on account of their insolubility, little suited for dyeing and printing. When fixed on the fibre, however, by means of oxidation, shades are obtained which are characterised by their extreme fastness.

Only two colouring matters of this division are technically applied, viz., aniline-black and the "direct naphthylamine-violet."

Aniline-black.

Preparation.—For the preparation of aniline-black in substance, aniline hydrochloride is very carefully oxidised. If the oxidation is carried too far, quinone, $C_6H_4O_2$, is produced; but if the oxidation is too feeble, green or violet colours are formed.

The following may be used as oxidising agents:—Chromic acid (potassium bichromate) permanganate of potash, and such metallic salts as easily give off oxygen. These metallic salts are generally employed along with potassium chlorate.

The most suitable combination is copper sulphate and potassium chlorate. The action of this mixture may be explained by the equation—

$$2KClO_3 + CuSO_4 = K_2SO_4 + Cu(ClO_3)_2.$$

The copper chlorate formed is very easily decomposed; its solutions give off gases at 60°, which consist essentially of chlorous acid.

A very useful material is a salt of vanadium, vanadiate of ammonia. In the formation of aniline-black, vanadium chloride is formed, which is immediately converted to vanadic acid by the potassium chlorate. One part of vanadium will do the work of 4,000 parts of copper, and will form from 10,000 to 200,000 parts of aniline-black.

Iron, chromium and osmium salts may be used in place of copper sulphate, but do not possess any special advantages. Sulphate of cerium, however, is preferred by some to any other oxidising agent.

The finest aniline-black is obtained from pure aniline; ortho-toluidine gives a bluish-black, para-toluidine a brown-black. Aniline oil for black should boil at 182°. Aniline-black is produced by action of a galvanic current on a concentrated solution of an aniline salt. In this case, the oxidation is effected by the electrolytic oxygen evolved at the positive pole. The following receipt serves for preparing aniline-black in substance:—Dissolve 40 parts of aniline hydrochloride, 20 parts chlorate of potash, 40 parts of copper sulphate, and 16 parts of sal ammoniac, in 500 parts of water, and warm to 60°.

The crude aniline-black may be purified for analysis by boiling the precipitate obtained successively with hydrochloric acid, alcohol, ether, benzene, etc. The residue consists of the hydrochloride, from which the base is prepared by decomposition with dilute alkalies.

Properties.—Aniline-black has a formula consisting of some multiple of C_6H_5N, probably $C_{30}H_{25}N_5$.

The salts of aniline-black are unstable, as by drying or

washing the acid is given off. To the hydrochloride the formula $C_{30}H_{25}N_5 \cdot 2HCl$ is usually given.*

In the dry state, aniline-black and its salts form black amorphous powders, which are insoluble in acids and alkalies. Crude aniline-black contains many other colouring matters, which may be removed by different solvents. Thus boiling chloroform removes a blue-violet colouring matter, derived from ortho-toluidine, which possesses the empirical formula C_7H_7N.

Acetic acid, alcohol and benzene remove brown and red impurities.

Concentrated sulphuric acid dissolves aniline-black, with formation of a sulphonic acid. The new colouring matter is insoluble in acidulated water, and therefore separates out when the solution is poured into water. By continued washing with water it dissolves, with a green colour. This sulphonic acid serves for the preparation of an aniline-black vat, as its weak alkaline solutions are reduced by zinc powder, grape sugar, etc.

Fibres placed in this solution, and exposed to air, rapidly turn blue; acids turn the colour green. By subsequent treatment with bichromate of potash, a fast grey is produced. Hitherto, this process has not found any technical application.

Strong oxidising agents, such as chromic acid, convert aniline-black into quinone. Energetic reducing agents completely destroy aniline black, forming chiefly para-phenylenediamine, $C_6H_4(NH_2)_2$, and diamidodiphenylamine:—

$$\begin{array}{l} \diagup C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2 \\ N - C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2 \\ \diagdown H. \end{array}$$

Application.—Aniline-black comes into commerce as a paste, and finds a limited application as a steam black.

* According to a recent publication of Liechti and Suida, aniline-black possesses the formula $C_{18}H_{16}ClN_3$, in which the chlorine is not present as hydrochloric acid. It is thus represented as a chlorine-substitution product.

The colour is thickened with albumen and fixed by steaming.

Aniline-black fixed direct on the fibre is of great importance in calico-printing, where it has almost entirely replaced the blacks formerly produced with logwood and madder.

In Lightfoot's original patent, granted in 1863, a thickened mixture of aniline, hydrochloric acid, copper chloride, and chlorate of potash is printed on the cotton. This receipt resembles the one given above for the preparation of aniline-black in substance, and produces a very good black.

The above mixture has, unfortunately, an injurious action on the steel "doctors" of the cylinder printing machine, because of the action of the copper salts on the iron, which is eaten away, while an equivalent quantity of copper is deposited.

Lauth overcame this drawback by using copper sulphide in place of the copper chloride. Lauth's receipt is used, with one or two variations, for ordinary aniline-black at the present time.

The colour consists of—

10 litres starch paste.
350 grams chlorate of potash.
300 „ copper sulphide.
300 „ sal ammoniac.
800 „ aniline hydrochloride.

After printing, the fabrics are hung up in the aniline-black chamber, till a dark green colour is developed. The temperature of this room is generally 30° to 40°, the degree of moisture being exactly regulated. The development generally lasts two days. The fabric is then passed through an alkaline bath of silicate of soda, chalk, or, if possible, ammonia. If the pieces are treated with ammonia, before the black is completely developed a blue shade is produced. Acids reproduce the green. This intermediate product is called emeraldine, and the blue

produced by alkalies, azurine. Even the completely developed aniline-black appears to contain some emeraldine, as it becomes green when treated with acids. Aniline-black sometimes turns green if the pieces are allowed to lie in the air for some time. This alteration is most probably caused by sulphurous acid from the gas, where gas-lights are used. The black is reproduced on washing, in its original beauty.

A black which does not turn green is obtained by a subsequent oxidation of the pieces which have been passed through ammonia. The best materials for this purpose are an acidified solution of bichromate of potash or a ferric salt. By this process iron or chromium lakes of aniline-black seem to be produced on the fibre, as the latter is found to absorb considerable quantities of the oxide unless great care is taken. Another method of obtaining aniline-blacks which do not turn green is based upon the fact that xylidine when used in place of aniline yields a black which after some time assumes a red cast. Pure aniline, as is well known, yields a black which turns green. If now the two bases are used together in the proper proportion the green and the red which are subsequently formed neutralize each other, and the fabric consequently retains its original colour.

During the development of aniline-black, oxides of chlorine are formed, and these tend to injure the fibre. For very delicate fabrics the hydrochloride of aniline may be replaced by a mixture of the tartrate with sal ammoniac.

In this process chlorate of soda is used instead of chlorate of potash, since the sparingly soluble potassium bitartrate would crystallise out, and either prevent or considerably retard the formation of black on the fibre.

The pieces printed by the above receipts cannot be steamed, as the mixture would act violently on the fibre at such a temperature. Pieces have even been known to fire on steaming. Ordinary aniline-black cannot, therefore,

be combined with steam colours. In producing mixed colours, the following process is adopted.

If it is desired to produce aniline-black and alizarine-red on a white ground, first print for the red with thickened acetate of alumina, then print the aniline-black, and develop in the usual manner. Pass through a chalk-bath, which effects the development of the black and the fixation of the alumina mordant. Then dye with alizarine, and wash, clear, etc., in the usual way. (See Alizarin.) This process gives very beautiful results, but is rather difficult to manage.

A good steam black is obtained when aniline hydrochloride is completely replaced by aniline ferrocyanide. The chlorous acid developed in the nascent state acts on the hydroferrocyanic acid, producing hydroferricyanic acid.

On an aniline-black ground, it is impossible to produce discharges, owing to the great stability of the colour. On this account, reserves have to be used. Reserves are generally alkaline, and act by the neutralisation of the acid colour, as aluminate or citrate of soda, etc.

Sulphocyanides form very suitable reserves; they absorb the chlorine, forming persulphocyanogen. The steam alizarine-red produced with aluminium sulphocyanide may be printed over with aniline-black, without being spoiled.

Aniline-black is as yet not suitable for wool- and silk-dyeing, since the feel, lustre and tenacity of the fibres are thereby injured.

Aniline-black is easily produced on cotton yarn. The dye-bath is prepared with potassium bichromate, aniline hydrochloride, and excess of hydrochloric acid, and the slightly soaped yarn is placed in the cold solution. After some time the bath is slowly heated to 60° C. The dyed goods are then washed in water, soda, and soft soap, to remove free acid, etc.

In this process, it is very important to observe the

proper proportions, and the concentration of the bath. If the right proportions are not adhered to, the aniline-black may be precipitated before the yarn is introduced, and a loss is thus caused. By using dilute solutions the black produced has a greyish cast.

The following proportions give good results :—

For 100 kg. yarn—

Dissolve 2 kg. aniline in
32 lit. hydrochloric acid, and
42 lit. water,

pour into the dye-bath, containing a solution of 8 kg. potassium bichromate.

Detection on the fibre.—The colour is either unaltered by acids, or turned slightly greenish; alkalies restore the original colour.

Alkalies are without action.

If passed several times through strong solutions of permanganate of potash and oxalic acid, alternately, the colour is destroyed. Chloride of lime turns the colour brown-red. Weak oxidising agents are without influence.

Naphthameïn.

(Naphthalene-violet.)

Alpha-naphthylamine, $C_{10}H_7NH_2$, yields by suitable oxidation, naphthameïn, a violet colour, which is in many respects very similar to aniline-black.

It separates as an amorphous, purple precipitate, when an aqueous solution of hydrochloride of naphthylamine is treated with ferric chloride.

Naphthameïn is insoluble in water, dilute mineral acids, and alkalies, and is sparingly soluble in alcohol; but easily in acetic acid or ether. The acetic-acid solution may be used for dyeing and printing, but the colours produced with it are very dull.

Naphthameïn dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid with a blue colour.

No formula has yet been assigned to this dye-stuff. A colouring matter similar, or identical, is obtained by printing with the aniline-black mixture, in which aniline is replaced by naphthylamine. The development and fixing is the same. The copper sulphide may be replaced by ferric chloride. After oxidation it is advantageous to pass the material through a solution of ferric chloride.

The shades produced vary from a grey-violet to a grey-brown. It is not nearly as fast to light, etc., as aniline-black.

Detection on the fibre.—Concentrated hydrochloric acid changes to a light grey; ammonia and caustic soda have little action.

(*d*) COLOURING MATTERS CONTAINING SULPHUR.

Red, violet, and blue colouring matters containing sulphur are obtained when the hydrochloric acid compounds of some aromatic diamines are dissolved in sulphuretted hydrogen water and oxidised with ferric chloride.

The diamines used must have their amido groups in the para position to each other, ortho- and meta-diamido compounds yielding no colouring matters.

Of this class of colouring matters, only one, viz., methylene-blue, has become of technical importance, as it possesses a very beautiful colour, and the diamine, dimethylparaphenylenediamine, used in its preparation is more easily manufactured than the other diamines.

Methylene-blue.

Preparation.—The crude material for the manufacture of methylene-blue is dimethylaniline, $C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2$. This is dissolved in hydrochloric acid, and a solution of the exact equivalent of sodium nitrite added; para-nitroso-dimethylaniline is produced, according to the equation—

$$C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)_2HCl + NaNO_2 =$$
Dimethylaniline hydrochloride.
$$NO\cdot C_6H_4\cdot N(CH_3)_2 + NaCl + H_2O.$$
Nitrosodimethylaniline.

The liquid is then diluted with water and hydrochloric acid and placed in a vessel fitted with stirrer and flue, and treated with sulphuretted hydrogen. The nitrosodimethylaniline is thereby reduced to dimethylparaphenylenediamine. When the reaction is over, the solution, which was yellow at first, is found to be completely decolourised.

The reaction is not a quantitative one, as by the action of the sulphuretted hydrogen a bye-product is formed, which is converted to methylene-blue by mere exposure to air.

After decolourisation, small quantities of ferric chloride solution are added, till a slight excess of the latter is present. Then the solution is saturated with salt, and the dye separated by zinc chloride. A red colouring matter, not precipitated by zinc chloride, remains in solution. This colouring matter may be obtained as chief product, if the sulphuretted hydrogen is allowed to act for a longer period and more ferric chloride is used.

The formation of methylene-blue and of the red product is expressed by the following equations :—

$$2C_6H_4\cdot NH_2\cdot N(CH_3)_2 + H_2S + 4O = C_{16}H_{18}N_4S + 4H_2O.$$
Dimethylparaphenylenediamine. — Blue base.

$$2C_6H_4\cdot NH_2\cdot N(CH_3)_2 + 4H_2S + 7O = C_{16}H_{18}N_4S_4 + 7H_2O.$$
Base of red.

An interesting method of producing methylene-blue is described in a patent of Messrs. Ewer & Pick, published recently. It is based upon the following facts :—

If two plates of platinum, which constitute the two poles of an electric generator, are immersed in a solution of sulphuretted hydrogen, and paradimethylphenylenediamine

$$C_6H_4\begin{cases} NH_2 \\ N(CH_3)_2 \end{cases}$$

in dilute sulphuric acid, an active development of hydrogen takes place at the negative pole; while the fluid which surrounds the positive pole becomes blue. The reaction ceases, however, in a short time, the positive pole becoming coated with a grey deposit. But if the plate is kept clean by means of a small brush, the whole of the sulphuretted hydrogen disappears, and the liquid begins to assume a blue colour. It is then found to contain chiefly reduced methylene-blue (methylene-white), along with a small quantity of methylene-blue in solution.

Properties.—Commercial methylene-blue is a zinc double salt. It forms a blue powder, easily soluble in alcohol or water. The *hydrochloride*, $C_{16}H_{18}N_4 \cdot S \cdot HCl$, may be prepared from the zinc compound by evaporating the aqueous solution to dryness, dissolving the residue in water, and adding concentrated hydrochloric acid. It forms dark blue leaflets, easily soluble in alcohol and in water.

Ammonia does not precipitate methylene-blue solutions; potash and soda produce blue precipitates.

The free base forms green needles with a metallic lustre, which may be crystallised from hot water.

Hydrochloric acid and nitric acid turn the solutions of methylene-blue greenish. Methylene-blue is easily decolourised by reducing agents, such as stannous chloride, zinc and acetic acid, etc. With tannin, it forms a compound soluble in water, which is taken up by metallic mordants.

Application.—Methylene-blue has no special value for wool- and silk-dyeing, as for these materials other dye-stuffs are used which possess greater fastness and brilliancy.

On the other hand, it is of the greatest importance in cotton-yarn dyeing, and still more so in calico-printing. The blue produced is of a greenish shade, and possesses great fastness. In artificial light the shades appear greenish.

Tannin and various mineral mordants are used in fixing; the mordant depends on the shade required.

For pure blue, the following receipt may be used:—

Mordant the oiled goods with alum, and fix the alumina in a chalk-bath containing some sodium arseniate. Then heat in a weak tannin-bath, and dye the mordanted goods in a dye-bath containing methylene-blue, phosphate of soda and soda, beginning cold and raising the temperature gradually to the boil.

For dark blue (indigo):—The goods are mordanted after oiling in acetonitrate of iron. They are then placed in an ageing chamber, and the mordant is finally fixed in a chalk-bath. On treating with tannin, a dark ground is produced, on which methylene-blue dyes a beautiful blue resembling indigo.

The tartar-emetic process is also applicable for methylene-blue. The methylene-blue and tannin, thickened with gum tragacanth, is printed and steamed, and subsequently fixed in a bath of tartar-emetic.

Detection on the fibre.—Methylene-blue is faster on cotton than aniline-blue. It resists the action of neutral soaps and dilute chloride of lime solutions, and is very fast to light.

Ammonia is without action, but caustic alkalies and alkaline soaps remove the blue colour.

Hydrochloric acid takes up the blue, forming a green solution.

The following reactions are very characteristic:—Moistened with hydrochloric acid, the sample first turns green, and is gradually decolourised. Stannous chloride and other reducing agents reduce methylene-blue much quicker than other blue colouring matters. It is especially sensitive towards chromic acid. A three per cent. solution of potassium bichromate renders it violet, and finally discharges it. If fixed with tannin, a dark catechu-brown is produced.

Ethylene-blue.

Ethylene-blue is very similar to methylene-blue, and is prepared in exactly the same manner, diethylaniline being used instead of dimethylaniline.

The distinction between the two colouring matters is easy. The goods mordanted with tannin and dyed, are treated with chloride of lime solution. Methylene-blue is decolourised, ethylene-blue becomes silver-grey.

Colouring matters derived from tetramethyldiamidobenzophenon.

These colouring matters are obtained by the action of tetramethyldiamidobenzophenon,

$$\begin{matrix} & \diagup C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2 \\ CO & \\ & \diagdown C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2, \end{matrix}$$

on the hydrochlorides of certain amines in presence of condensing agents. They are all basic colouring matters, and are used chiefly in the dyeing of cotton.

Auramines. Ordinary auramine is obtained in the following manner: 25 kilos. tetramethyldiamidobenzophenon are well mixed with 25 kilos. ammonium chloride and 25 kilos. zinc chloride, and the mixture is heated for 4–5 hours to 150°—160° C., care being taken to agitate it well from time to time. The reaction is over as soon as a sample taken out dissolves in water. The melt is then allowed to cool, when it is broken up and extracted first with cold water, acidulated with hydrochloric acid in order to remove most of the unchanged ammonium chloride and the zinc chloride. It is then extracted with boiling water, and the colouring matter is precipitated from the filtered solution by the addition of common salt. The crystalline precipitate obtained in this way can be further purified by crystallising from water.

Auramine is the hydrochloride of a colourless base which forms with bases intensely yellow and for the most part well crystallised salts. It is supposed to possess the formula:

$$\begin{matrix} & \diagup C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2 \\ CN\cdot HCl & \\ & \diagdown C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2. \end{matrix}$$

The hydrochloride, sulphate, and acetate are easily soluble in water, while the double compound with zinc chloride, as well as the sulphocyanide, are only very sparingly soluble in cold water. Mineral acids when added to the solution produce at first no change, but if allowed to act for a length of time, or if boiled with them, the solution is discolourised, the colouring matter being reconverted into the ketonbase and ammonia. Alkaline reducing agents, such as sodium amalgam, gradually decolourise the alcoholic solution. On adding water, a colourless crystalline product of reduction is thrown down, which when treated with acetic acid and heated gives a deep blue colouration. If auramine is heated with aniline up to the boiling point of the latter, the mixture evoles ammonia and becomes orange, phenylauramine being formed.

The auramine of commerce is a yellow powder which dissolves easily in water with a yellow colour. It is fixed on cotton with tannin and tartar emetic,* and yields an extremely pure and brilliant yellow, which is sufficiently fast to soap and light for ordinary purposes. It can also be dyed on cotton mordanted with Turkey-red oil.

Detection on the fibre. The fibre is decolourised by strong sulphuric or hydrochloric acid, as well as by caustic potash solution.

If in the preparation of auramine according to the above method, the ammonium chloride is replaced by the hydrochlorides of aniline, toluidine, naphthylamine, or other aromatic amines, substituted auramines are formed, which vary in shade from yellow to light brown. Thus metaxylylauramine yields in dyeing golden-yellow shades, phenyl- and paratolyl-auramines yield orange shades, while the metaphenylmediamine derivative yields an orange-brown. Hitherto none of the substituted auramines has been obtained in a crystalline form.

* In place of tartar emetic the double oxalate of antimony and potash is largely used, not only for this, but also for other basic aniline dyes.

Victoria blue. If tetramethyldiamidobenzophenon is treated with phenylnaphthylamine and phosphorous oxychloride, a blue melt is obtained. The melt is first extracted with cold water and is then dried, in which state it comes into the market as Victoria blue B.

Victoria blue B is supposed to possess the constitutional formula—

$$\begin{array}{l} \quad\diagup C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2 \\ C - C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2 \\ \quad\diagdown C_{10}H_7N(C_6H_5). \text{ H Cl,} \end{array}$$

according to which it is represented as the hydrochloride of tetramethyl-phenyl-triamido-diphenyl-naphthyl-carbinol.

It forms a dark blue powder with coppery reflex, which dissolves in water with a deep blue colour. On boiling, the solution is rendered turbid and the free colour base is gradually thrown down as a reddish resinous precipitate. In presence of acetic acid this decomposition does not take place. Dilute sulphuric acid added to the aqueous solution turns it first green and then orange, but on neutralising the original blue colour is restored. This change is no doubt due to the formation of salts containing more than one equivalent of acid.

Victoria blue B may be dyed on wool or silk in a bath acidulated with acetic acid. Cotton is first mordanted with Turkey-red oil and aluminium acetate.

Detection on the fibre. Sulphuric acid changes the colour of the fibre to a reddish-brown, which is, however, restored to the original on washing with water.

Of the two other colouring matters belonging to this group, viz. *Victoria blue* 4 R and *Night blue*, the latter only requires special mention on account of the extreme purity of colour which it will yield in dyeing. It forms a brown-violet powder with coppery reflex, and in its reactions greatly resembles Victoria blue B. It is dyed in the same way.

II. Phenol Dye-stuffs.

The phenol dyes have an acid nature, which is caused by the hydroxyl group contained in them.

They are taken up by animal fibres, either in the free state, or in form of their soluble salts. Many give insoluble lakes with metallic oxides, and may therefore be dyed on animal fibres mordanted with alumina, iron, lead, etc. Other colouring matters of this group are applied with oil and tannin mordants.

The phenol dye-stuffs may be classified as follows :—

(*a*) Nitro-derivatives.

(*b*) Colouring matters produced by the action of nitrous acid on phenols.

(*c*) Rosolic acids.

(*d*) Phthaleïns.

(*e*) Indophenoles.

In addition to section (*a*), a nitro-derivative of diphenylamine, *Aurantia*, will be considered.

This substance contains no hydroxyl group, and really belongs to the aniline dyes; but it also stands in close relation to the nitrophenoles.

Crude Products.

The most important raw materials for the preparation of the phenol dyes are the phenols.

The phenols are derivatives of aromatic hydrocarbons from which they are produced by substitution of one or more hydroxyl groups for one or more hydrogen atoms.

From benzene, C_6H_6, the following phenols are derived:—

C_6H_5OH, phenol;

three isomeric dioxybenzenes, ortho, meta, and para—

$C_6H_4{<}^{OH(1)}_{OH(2)}$, pyrocatechin,

$C_6H_4 \begin{matrix} \nearrow OH(1) \\ \searrow OH(3) \end{matrix}$, resorcin,

$C_6H_4 \begin{matrix} \nearrow OH(1) \\ \searrow OH(4) \end{matrix}$, hydroquinon,

and two isomeric trioxybenzenes—

$C_6H_3 \cdot (OH)_3$, phloroglucine and pyrogallic acid.

Toluene, $C_6H_5CH_3$, yields—

$C_6H_4 \begin{matrix} \nearrow OH \\ \searrow CH_3 \end{matrix}$, cressol (3 isomers),

$C_6H_3 \begin{matrix} \nearrow CH_3\ 1 \\ -OH\ 3 \\ \searrow OH\ 5 \end{matrix}$ orcin, $C_6H_3 \begin{matrix} \nearrow CH_3\ 1 \\ -OH\ 2 \\ \searrow OH\ 4 \end{matrix}$ cresorcin,

and hydrotoluquinon.

Naphthalene, $C_{10}H_8$, yields two phenols, the alpha and beta naphthols, $C_{10}H_7 \cdot OH$.

The only phenols which are of importance in the preparation of artificial colouring matters are, phenol, resorcin, pyrogallic acid, and the naphthols.

Phenol and Cresol.—Preparation, see p. 68; properties, see p. 72.

Resorcin, $C_6H_4(OH)_2$.—The method used for the preparation of resorcin, serves as a general method for preparing phenols from hydrocarbons. The hydrocarbons are converted into sulphonic acids, and their soda salts are melted with caustic soda :—

$$\underset{\text{Benzene sulphonate of soda.}}{C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3Na} + 2NaHO = \underset{\text{Phenolate of soda.}}{C_6H_5ONa} + Na_2SO_3 + H_2O.$$

Resorcin is prepared in the following manner:—One part of benzene is run into 4 parts of fuming sulphuric acid, in a thin stream. The operation is effected in a vessel fitted with condenser. The mixture becomes heated to the boiling-point of the benzene, which is converted into the monosulphonic acid, $C_5H_5 \cdot SO_3H$. When all the benzene has dissolved, the temperature is

raised to 275°, when the monosulphonic acid is converted into the disulphonic acid, $C_6H_4 \cdot (SO_3H)_2$. After cooling, the mixture is poured into water, saturated with milk of lime, filtered from the gypsum, and the filtrate decomposed with the calculated quantity of sodium carbonate, whereby the calcium salt is converted into the sodium salt :—

$$C_6H_4 \cdot (SO_3)_2Ca + Na_2CO_3 = C_6H_4(SO_3Na)_2 + CaCO_3.$$

The carbonate of lime is filtered off, and the filtrate evaporated to dryness.

One part of this salt is heated with $2\frac{1}{2}$ parts of caustic soda (liquefied in a little water) to 270°, with continual stirring till the mixture has become nearly solid. It then contains the sodium salt of resorcin, sodium sulphite, and excess of caustic soda, according to the equation :—

$$C_6H_4 \cdot (SO_3Na)_2 + 4NaHO = C_6H_4(ONa)_2 + 2Na_2SO_3 + 2H_2O.$$

The melt is allowed to cool, dissolved in boiling water and saturated with hydrochloric acid; sulphurous acid being developed, and resorcin produced in the free state. After filtering, the liquid is extracted with ether. On evaporation of the ether the resorcin remains as a fibrous crystalline mass, which may be purified by distillation, or by crystallisation from benzene. In the pure state, resorcin forms colourless crystals, m.p. 110°. It is easily soluble in water, alcohol, and ether, and possesses a very sweet taste.

Pyrogallic acid, $C_6H_3(OH)_3$.—This trioxbenzene may be prepared synthetically from benzene, but it is more economically obtained by heating gallic acid to 210°—220°. Gallic acid is obtained from natural tannin, so that pyrogallic acid stands in close relation to the vegetable kingdom. The formation is expressed thus :—

$$\underset{\text{Gallic acid.}}{C_6H_2 \cdot (OH)_3 \cdot COOH} = \underset{\text{Pyrogallic acid.}}{C_6H_3(OH)_3} + CO_2.$$

The product distils during the heating, and condenses on the cooler parts of the vessel in white crusts.

It may also be prepared by direct heating of tannin, without previous preparation of gallic acid.

Pyrogallic acid forms white, very light leaflets, m.p. 115°, B.P. 210°. It is very easily soluble in water, alcohol, and ether. The alkaline solutions rapidly absorb oxygen from the air, and become brown.

Alpha- and beta-naphthol, $C_{10}H_7 \cdot OH$.—These phenols are prepared by the general method given under resorcin, i.e., by melting the alpha- and beta- naphthalene mono-sulphonic acids $C_{10}H_2 \cdot SO_3H$ with caustic soda.

Naphthalene treated with fuming sulphuric acid at 80° to 90°, yields a mixture of alpha- with little beta-naphthalene sulphonic acid, which are separated by means of the different solubility of their lime-salts. To effect this, the solution formed with sulphuric acid is diluted and saturated with milk of lime, filtered and concentrated. On cooling, the sparingly soluble beta salt crystallises out.

The more important beta-naphthol is obtained from the salt obtained by heating naphthalene with concentrated sulphuric acid to 200°. The product consists entirely of the beta acid, which yields pure beta-naphthol when melted with caustic soda.

Alpha-naphthol forms lustrous needles, which melt at 90°. It is sparingly soluble in water, easily soluble in alcohol and ether.

Beta-naphthol forms leaflets, m.p. 122°. Its solubility resembles that of alpha-naphthol.

(*a*) NITRO-BODIES.

These dyes are as a rule of a yellow colour. They are stronger acids than the phenols from which they are derived.

They possess the following characteristics in common :—

Strong acid reducing agents, such as stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid, convert them into the colourless amido derivatives. They dissolve in concentrated sulphuric acid, yielding either yellow or colourless solutions. Their solutions, or fibres dyed with them, are but slightly altered by hydrochloric acid, while ammonia and caustic soda tend to darken, or redden the colour. When dyed in acid baths, the colour may subsequently be partly removed from the fibre by boiling water. These reactions serve to distinguish these yellow colouring matters from others. Thus, phosphine is turned lighter by ammonia, while the yellow azo dyes are reddened by acids.

Picric Acid.

Preparation.—Picric acid or trinitrophenol may be obtained by warming pure carbolic acid with nitric acid :—

$$\underset{\text{Phenol.}}{C_6H_5OH} + 3HNO_3 = \underset{\text{Picric acid.}}{C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH} + 3H_2O.$$

The process is much better, and less bye-products are formed, if the phenol is first converted into its sulphonic acid. For this purpose, carbolic acid is heated with sulphuric acid to 100° till a sample dissolves completely in water. The liquid is then slightly diluted, run into strong nitric acid, and warmed. The reactions are expressed by the following equations :—

1. $\underset{\text{Phenol.}}{C_6H_5OH} + H_2SO_4 = \underset{\text{Phenolsulphonic acid.}}{C_6H_4\begin{matrix}OH\\SO_3H\end{matrix}} + H_2O.$

2. $\underset{\text{Phenolsulphonic acid.}}{C_6H_4\begin{matrix}OH\\SO_3H\end{matrix}} + 3HNO_3 = \underset{\text{Picric acid.}}{C_6H_2OH(NO_2)_3} + H_2O + H_2SO_4$

The acid liquor contains picric acid, nitric acid, sulphuric acid, and resinous impurities. It is diluted with water, and soda added till the resins are separated, after

which it is filtered and excess of soda solution added. The precipitated sodium picrate is dissolved in water and decomposed with sulphuric acid. The picric acid is salted out.

Properties.—Picric acid forms light yellow leaflets, m.p. 122·5°. It may be sublimated by cautious heating; rapid heating causes it to explode. It possesses an extremely bitter taste (hence the name πικρός = bitter). One part of picric acid dissolves in 86 parts of water at 15° and in 26 parts at 76°; it is easily soluble in alcohol, ether and benzene. The solutions are yellower than the free acid; the addition of a little sulphuric acid causes the colour to become much lighter.

Picric acid is a strong, monobasic acid; its salts are of a yellow or orange colour. They explode with great violence on heating. The potassium salt, $C_6H_2 \cdot (NO_2)_3OK$, is distinguished by its comparative insolubility, 1 part requiring 288 parts of water at 15° to dissolve it. The ammonium and sodium salts are more easily soluble. The salts with the alkaline earths are soluble in water. One part of the lead-salt dissolves in 119 parts of water at 15°.

By warming with tin and hydrochloric acid, picric acid is completely reduced; the colourless solution contains the hydrochloric acid compound of triamidophenol, $C_6H_2(NH_2)_3OH$.

If alkaline reducing agents are used, the reduction is not carried so far. Thus, if sulphuretted hydrogen is passed into a solution of picric acid in alcoholic ammonia, only one nitro group is reduced, and dinitroamidophenol, or picramic acid is produced:—

$$C_6H_2 \begin{cases} \swarrow NO_2 \\ -NO_2 \\ -NH_2 \\ \searrow OH. \end{cases}$$

The latter dyes wool and silk brown.

If concentrated solutions of picric acid and potas-

sium cyanide are mixed, a dark red solution is formed, and on standing reddish-brown crystals are deposited. They consist of the potassium salt of isopurpuric acid, $C_8H_4KN_5O_6$, and are produced according to the equation—

$$C_6H_2\cdot(NO_2)_3OH + 3CNK + 2H_2O =$$
Picric acid.
$$C_8H_4KN_5O_6 + K_2CO_3 + NH_3.$$
Potassium isopurpurate.

Free isopurpuric acid is very unstable, and is only known in the form of salts. Its potassium or ammonium salt was formerly used as a dye, under the name of "Grenat soluble." It dyes a brown upon wool or silk. The baths must not be strongly acid; the addition of a little acetic or tartaric acid is best.

Testing of picric acid.—Commercial picric acid is generally crystallised. It should dissolve in water, acidified with sulphuric acid, without any residue. It should be entirely soluble in 10 parts of alcohol. If alcohol leaves a residue, the latter will most probably consist of inorganic salts (Glauber's salts, nitre, etc.), which may be recognised in the usual manner.

Oxalic acid is sometimes added. To detect it, the sample is dissolved in ammonia, and chloride of calcium is added. A white precipitate indicates oxalic acid.

Sugar is detected by saturating the aqueous solution with sodium carbonate, evaporating to dryness, and extracting with diluted alcohol; sugar is dissolved while picrate of soda remains. Pure picric acid should be easily soluble in benzene.

Application of picric acid.—Picric acid is a substantive colour on silk and wool. Its dyeing power is very great, one part being sufficient to dye a thousand parts of silk a distinct yellow.

Animal fibres are dyed in acid baths. Sulphuric acid is the most advantageous for this purpose, as it causes the colour to deposit more evenly.

Picric-acid yellow is darkened by the action of light and air. It may be removed from the fibre by repeated washing.

In order to fix it upon wool, alum or bichromate of potash are sometimes used. The picrates of alumina and chromium are soluble in a large quantity of water; thus no lakes are formed on the fibre, and the only advantage of this method is that picric acid possesses a somewhat greater affinity to alumina and chromium salts than to the free acid.

A method of producing weighted yellow silks is based upon the fact that picric acid forms a sparingly soluble lead-salt. For this purpose the silk is first mordanted with lead acetate, and then dyed in picric acid. Silk containing picrate of lead, however, is very liable to take fire, the flame being very difficult to extinguish. The sulphuretted hydrogen in the air is also liable to blacken it, owing to the formation of lead sulphide.

On cotton, picric acid may be fixed with albumen; but the colours are so dull as to have no practical value.

Picric acid gives a somewhat greenish yellow, and thus is seldom used for pure yellow.

On the other hand, it is very suitable for dyeing mixed colours. It may be combined with methyl-green for yellow-green, indigo-carmine or aniline-blue for green, with violet for olive, and with magenta for scarlet.

These mixed colours are generally faster than colours produced alone.

A very good green is obtained on wool with indigo-carmine and picric acid.

The picrates of the rosaniline bases are insoluble, and this explains why the mixed scarlet is so fast.

The detection on the fibre.—Picric-acid yellow is reddened by a mixture of stannous chloride and alkali (formation of picramic acid), and also by potassium cyanide (formation of isopurpuric acid).

In order to detect it in fabrics dyed with mixed colours,

the best method is to extract with dilute alcohol, evaporate to dryness, and test the residue with ammonium sulphide or potassium cyanide.

All fabrics dyed with picric acid possess a bitter taste.

In some cases picric acid is added to beer, to give it the required bitter taste. In order to detect an adulteration of this kind, 10 c.c. of the beer are shaken with 5 c.c. of amylic alcohol, the extract evaporated, and tested with potassium cyanide or ammonium sulphide.

Phenicienne. Phenyl-brown.

If phenol is nitrated by another process, instead of picric acid, a brown colour, phenyl-brown, is obtained.

In order to prepare it, 10 to 12 parts of a mixture of two volumes of sulphuric acid and one volume of nitric acid, sp. gr. 1·35, are gradually added to 1 part of cooled phenol. A considerable amount of nitrous fumes is evolved. The product is then poured into water, collected on a filter, and the precipitate washed.

Phenyl-brown consists of two substances. The brown portion is amorphous, insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol, alkalies, and spirits of wine. Its chemical composition is unknown. The second constituent is a binitrophenol, $C_6H_3(OH)\cdot(NO_2)_2$; it dyes yellow, is crystallisable, and dissolves in hot water, alkalies and alcohol.

Phenyl-brown is a yellowish-brown powder, which melts on gentle heating, and on stronger heating deflagrates, owing to the binitrophenol it contains. It is only partially insoluble in water, but dissolves completely in alcohol.

The yellowish-brown solution is turned yellow by hydrochloric acid, and after some time a precipitate is produced.

Caustic soda and ammonia turn the liquid bluish violet. Metallic salts produce precipitates.

Phenyl-brown is often used in dyeing leather.

On wool it produces Havanna-brown shades, which are very fast to light. The colours are spoiled by steaming.

By chroming, i.e., passing through a bath of bichromate acidified with sulphuric acid, the colour is turned to a ruby-red.

Victoria Yellow.

Victoria yellow—

$$C_6H_2\begin{cases}CH_3\\NO_2\\NO_2\\OK,\end{cases}$$

is the potassium salt of dinitroparacresol, and is produced by the action of nitric acid on paratoluidine, $C_6H_4 \cdot CH_3 \cdot NH_2$, or on paracresol, $C_6H_4 \cdot CH_3 \cdot OH$.

It forms red crystals, which dissolve in water with a yellow colour. Hydrochloric acid decolourises the solution, and precipitates the free acid in the form of light yellow needles. Caustic alkalies and ammonia produce no alteration. By warming with potassium cyanide, a red colour is produced, similar in composition to isopurpuric acid.

Victoria yellow produces yellow shades on wool and silk, which are somewhat redder than those obtained with picric acid. The colours are, however, so unstable that they are seldom used in dyeing.

Detection.—Warm water removes the colour from the fibre. The dilute yellow solution is decolourised by hydrochloric acid; if concentrated, a precipitate is formed.

Hydrochloric acid decolourises the fibre; water reproduces the original colour.

Naphthol-yellow.

(Martius Yellow. Manchester Yellow.)

Naphthol-yellow is the soda, potash, or lime-salt of binitronaphthol:—

$$C_{10}H_5\begin{cases}NO_2\\NO_2\\OH.\end{cases}$$

Preparation.—Alpha-naphthol is treated at 100° with a mixture of nitric acid and sulphuric acid, and the nitro-compound formed is precipitated by pouring the product into water.

Or, the alpha-naphthol is converted into the mono-sulphonic acid with sulphuric acid, and then nitrated.

The sulpho group is thus removed, and substituted by NO_2, as in the preparation of picric acid.

Properties.—Binitronapthol forms yellow needles, which are insoluble in water. It melts at 138°. It is a strong acid, forming yellow or orange salts.

The sodium salt, $C_{10}H_5(NO_2)_2ONa+H_2O$, forms needles which are easily soluble in water. The lime-salt possesses the formula $(C_{10}H_5(NO_2)_2O)_2Ca+6\,H_2O$.

The solutions of naphthol-yellow are decolourised by hydrochloric acid, a precipitate of the free acid being produced. Ammonia is without action; caustic potash or soda produce precipitates of an orange-red colour. Potassium cyanide gives the isopurpuric-acid reaction; ammonium sulphide colours the solution red.

Naphthol-yellow is sometimes adulterated with picric acid, to detect which a sample is dissolved in water, and the binitronaphthol precipitated by hydrochloric acid. In presence of picric acid the filtrate has a yellow colour. The picric acid may be crystallised on evaporation.

Application.—Naphthol-yellow gives a very beautiful golden yellow on silk and wool, and is often used for mixed colours. A great drawback to its application is its sensibility to heat. A very slight increase of temperature causes it to volatilise; this even takes place in a summer heat.

Silk and wool are dyed in a bath containing acetic acid.

Naphthol-yellow, like picric acid and Victoria yellow, is not applicable to cotton.

Detection on the fibre.—Water takes up the colouring matter. The yellow solution is decolourised by dilute sulphuric acid (picric acid is only turned lighter). Boiling potassium cyanide gives it a red colour. Hydrochloric acid completely decolourises. If a sample of the material is wrapped in a piece of white paper and heated to 120° in an air-bath, part of the yellow colour is transferred to the paper.

Naphthol-yellow S.

Preparation.—Naphthol-yellow S is a sulphonic acid of Martius yellow. The free acid has the formula—

$$C_{10}H_4\begin{cases}SO_3H\\NO_2\\NO_2\\OH\end{cases}$$ Binitroalphanaphtholsulphonic acid.

By nitration of alpha-naphthol monosulphonic acid—

$$C_{10}H_6(SO_3H)OH,$$

the sulpho group is eliminated, and Martius yellow is formed. If alpha-naphthol trisulphonic acid, $C_{10}H_4(SO_3H)_3OH$, is nitrated, two sulpho groups are eliminated, and naphthol-yellow S is formed.

Alpha-naphthol is warmed with twice its weight of sulphuric acid (containing 25 per cent. of anhydride) to 40—50°, and the monosulphuric acid is then converted into trisulphonic acid by the addition of sulphuric acid containing 70 per cent. of anhydride. The mass is diluted with a little water, and treated with concentrated nitric acid. On cooling, dinitronaphthol sulphonic acid crystallises out. It is purified by recrystallisation, and is converted into the ammonium or sodium salt. From the mother-liquor the sulphuric acid is removed by lime, and the rest of the colouring matter is precipitated by potash.

Properties.—The free acid forms long yellow needles, easily soluble in hot water. It is a strong acid, replacing sulphuric acid in its compounds. If, for instance, its aqueous solution is mixed with potassium sulphate, the sparingly soluble potassium salt is precipitated, while free sulphuric acid remains in solution.

The potassium salt—

$$C_{10}H_4\begin{cases}(NO_2)_2\\SO_3K\\OK,\end{cases}$$

is sparingly soluble in cold water, easier in hot water. If treated with strong sulphuric acid the free acid is not precipitated, but an acid salt is formed, which possesses the formula—

$$C_{10}H_4\begin{cases}(NO_2)_2\\SO_3K\\OH.\end{cases}$$

Application.—Naphthol-yellow S is faster to washing than picric acid and Martius yellow. It does not volatilise on steaming. Silk is dyed in a bath acidified with sulphuric acid, wool with stannic chloride and sulphuric acid. Stannic chloride brightens the colour.

Detection on the fibre.—Boiling water does not remove the colour; a sample does not alter at 110° to 120°. Otherwise the reactions are the same as those of naphthol-yellow.

Heliochrysin (Sun-gold).

This beautiful yellow colouring matter is the sodium salt of tetranitronaphthol :—

$$C_{10}H_3\begin{cases}(NO_2)_4\\ONa.\end{cases}$$

It is obtained by energetic nitration of monobromnaph-

thalene, $C_{10}H_7Br$, and warming the tetranitrobromnaphthalene with soda solution :—

$$C_{10}H_3\begin{cases}(NO_2)_4\\Br\end{cases} + Na_2CO_3 = C_{10}H_3\begin{cases}(NO_2)_4\\ONa\end{cases} + NaBr + CO_2.$$

Tetranitrobromnaphthalene. Heliochrysin.

This colouring matter is not fast enough to light to be of much technical importance.

Aurantia.

Diphenylamine, $N(C_6H_5)_2H$, or better, methyldiphenylamine, $N(C_6H_5)_2 \cdot CH_3$, yields, on warming with nitric acid, a yellow substance, insoluble in water—hexanitrodiphenylamine :—

$$N\begin{cases}C_6H_2(NO_2)_3\\C_6H_2(NO_2)_3\\H.\end{cases}$$

This nitro product is a strong acid, the hydrogen atom bound to the nitrogen being easily replaced by metals.

The ammonium salt, $N(C_6H_2(NO_2)_3)_2 \cdot NH_4$, comes into commerce as aurantia.

Aurantia is a crystalline, reddish-yellow powder, which deflagrates slightly on heating. It is easily soluble in water and alcohol. The aqueous orange-yellow solution is darkened and reddened by alkalies. Acids precipitate the free acid as a sulphur-yellow, flocculent precipitate, the solution being rendered nearly colourless.

An acid solution of stannous chloride gives the same reaction ; but on boiling, the yellow precipitate becomes dark brown. Copper salts also turn the solution browner.

Application.—Silk and wool are dyed in baths containing a little sulphuric acid. The above remarks on the action of metallic salts render it necessary that aurantia must be dyed in vessels of wood or glass.

The application of aurantia has one very great drawback. It is not entirely harmless. Professor Gnehm, the

discoverer, states, that even dilute solutions of aurantia produce very painful blisters on the skin. The medical faculty of Cologne have, on the other hand, sanctioned its manufacture, as being harmless.

Detection on the fibre.—Hydrochloric acid turns it lighter yellow; ammonia and alkalies produce little alteration. The most characteristic reaction is warming with stannous chloride, which turns it dark brown.

Naphthol-green.

This colouring matter is obtained by oxidising an aqueous solution of nitroso-beta-naphthol monosulphonate of soda with ferric chloride. The colour of the solution passes from that of yellow-brown to almost a black. After allowing to stand for some hours, the excess of iron is precipitated by an alkali, and the green filtered solution is evaporated to dryness. The pure colouring matter may be obtained by crystallising the raw product from alcohol. If salts of cobalt are used in place of ferric chloride in the above reaction, brown colouring matters are formed, whereas salts of nickel produce yellow colouring matters.

The commercial product forms a dark green powder, which dissolves in water and is decolourised by excess of hydrochloric acid. By neutralising, the original colour is restored.

Napthol-green is not applicable to cotton, but it is very valuable for wool, on which it yields shades which although not very brilliant are full, and stand the action of light remarkably well. It is dyed in an acid (H_2SO_4) bath containing ferrous sulphate.

The constitutional formula of napthol-green is not known.

(*b*) COLOURING MATTERS PRODUCED BY THE ACTION OF NITROUS ACID ON PHENOLS.

Some phenols, such as carbolic acid, thymol, resorcin, orcin, and phloroglucin, are converted into dye-stuffs when treated with nitrous acid, in ethereal or sulphuric acid solution.

For this purpose the phenol is dissolved in strong sulphuric acid, and a solution of nitrous acid in strong sulphuric acid is added. The nitrous solution is prepared by gradual addition of 5 per cent. of sodium nitrite to concentrated sulphuric acid.

The mixture is warmed on the water-bath till the reaction is finished, and the product is precipitated by pouring into water.

Phenol, $C_6H_5 \cdot OH$, treated as above, gives a brown flocculent precipitate, which dissolves in sulphuric acid and alkalies, with a beautiful blue colour. It is known as "Liebermann's Phenol Dye-stuff." From orcin colouring matters are obtained which are closely related to the orchil colours, especially orceïn.

Of all these colouring matters, the one derived from resorcin alone has technical importance.

Fluorescent Resorcin-blue.

Resorcin gives, when treated as above, a red substance, diazoresorufin, $C_{18}H_{10}N_2O_5$.

Diazoresorufin is also produced by warming mononitroso-resorcin with resorcin and sulphuric acid :—

$$\underset{\text{Nitrosoresorcin.}}{2C_6H_3 \cdot NO\,(OH)_2} + \underset{\text{Resorcin.}}{C_6H_4(OH)_2} = \underset{\text{Diazoresorufin.}}{C_{18}H_{10}N_2O_5} + 3H_2O.$$

This confirms the above formula.

Diazoresorufin is nearly insoluble in water and alcohol.

It is a very weak acid, and forms salts with alkalies which dissolve in water with a cherry-red colour, the solution showing a beautiful cinnabar-red fluorescence.

Diazoresorufin itself is not suitable for dyeing, for the beautiful alkaline colours of the alkaline salts are only shown in neutral or alkaline solutions, while in acid baths wool and silk only assume a dirty brown colour.

By the action of bromine on diazoresorufin, a hexabrom-diazoresorufin is obtained, $C_{18}H_4Br_6N_2O_5$ (?), which resists the action of acids. Its ammonium-salt is the commercial resorcin-blue, or "*bleu fluorescent.*"

It forms a 10 per-cent. paste, in which the green metallic needles of the colouring matter may be distinguished. It is sparingly soluble in water or absolute alcohol; the best solvent is a mixture of equal parts of alcohol and water. The solutions are blue by transmitted light, red by reflected light. Strong acids, like hydrochloric or sulphuric acid, precipitate brown hexabrom-resorufin.

Silk is dyed with resorcin-blue in a neutral soap bath. The paste is placed in the bath, and dissolves easily.

Brightening is effected by tartaric or sulphuric acid.

The colour produced upon silk and wool is blue with a slight admixture of red and grey, and has a characteristic red fluorescence, especially in artificial light. It is perfectly fast to light, washing, and acid.

By combination with a yellow colouring matter, a beautiful fluorescent olive is produced.

On the fibre, resorcin-blue is easily distinguished by its fluorescence, and the action of dilute sulphuric acid. Ammonia and alkalies take up the colour, forming a blue solution with red fluorescence.

(*c*) ROSOLIC ACIDS.

The rosolic acids are derivatives of triphenylmethane, and stand in close relation to the rosanilines. They are rosanilines, in which the amido groups are substituted by hydroxyl. A product corresponding to pararosaniline would thus be constituted as follows :—

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4\cdot NH_2\\C_6H_4\cdot NH_2\\C_6H_4\cdot NH_2\end{cases}\qquad C\begin{cases}C_6H_4\cdot OH\\C_6H_4\cdot OH\\C_6H_4\cdot OH\end{cases}$$
$$OH. \qquad\qquad OH$$

Pararosaniline.

The intermediate product expressed by the last formula is however not known; it splits off water, forming pararosolic acid or aurin—

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4OH\\C_6H_4OH\\C_6H_4O,\end{cases}$$

just like pararosaniline splits off water in uniting with acids.

Pararosaniline may be converted into aurin in the following manner.

The hydrochloride of pararosaniline treated in dilute solution with sodium nitrite, yields diazopararosaniline chloride :—

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4\cdot NH_2\\C_6H_4\cdot NH_2\\C_6H_4\cdot NH\cdot HCl\end{cases} + 3NaNO_2 + 5HCl + H_2O =$$

Pararosaniline hydrochloride.

$$C\begin{cases}C_6H_4N{=}NCl\\C_6H_4N{=}NCl\\C_6H_4N{=}NCl\\OH\end{cases} + 3NaCl + 6H_2O.$$

Diazopararosaniline chloride.

The liquid is then boiled, with the addition of sulphuric acid, when aurin is formed:—

$$C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot N{=}NCl \\ C_6H_4\cdot N{=}NCl \\ C_6H_4\cdot N{=}NCl \\ OH \end{cases} + 3H_2O = C\begin{cases} C_6H_4\cdot OH \\ C_6H_4\cdot OH \\ C_6H_4\cdot O \end{cases} +$$

Diazopararosaniline chloride. Aurin.

$$3N_2 + 3HCl + H_2O.$$

Aurin heated to 200° with aqueous ammonia is reconverted to pararosaniline:—

$$\underset{\text{Aurin.}}{C_{19}H_{14}O_3} + 3NH_3 = \underset{\text{Pararosaniline.}}{C_{19}H_{17}N_3} + 3H_2O.$$

From rosaniline, rosolic acid may be prepared in a similar manner.

These two colouring matters are now only of secondary importance, but were formerly manufactured on a very large scale.

Corallin.

Yellow corallin.—To prepare this colouring matter, 8 parts of pure phenol are mixed in the cold with 3·2 parts of concentrated sulphuric acid, and after some hours 4·8 parts of oxalic acid are added, and the whole heated to 110° for twenty-four hours. The mass is then poured into water, and extracted several times with boiling water.

This product is yellow corallin. It contains about 20 per cent. of aurin, formed by the action of carbonic acid from the oxalic acid, upon phenol.

$$CO_2 + 3\underset{\text{Phenol.}}{C_6H_5OH} = \underset{\text{Aurin.}}{C_{19}H_{14}O_3} + 2H_2O.$$

The other constituents are crystalline derivatives of rosolic acid, and resinous bodies, which are mostly colourless.

"*Yellow corallin*" is a brown mass possessing a green

metallic lustre. It is almost insoluble in water, but easily soluble in alcohol. The yellow, alcoholic solution is turned red by alkalies, and yellow again by acids. This reaction is so delicate as to render corallin useful as an indicator in volumetric analysis.

Pure aurin, $C_{19}H_{14}O_3$, forms ruby-red crystals, with a blue fluorescence. It forms unstable salts with bases.

Red corallin.—If 2 parts of yellow corallin are heated with 1 part of ammonia liquor in a closed vessel to 120°—140°, a red colouring matter is formed, which is precipitated by pouring the product into water and acidifying.

It has been stated before, that at 200° pararosaniline is formed. Red corallin is an intermediate product, in which only one hydroxyl group of the aurin is replaced by NH_2:—

$$\underset{\text{Aurin.}}{C_{19}H_{14}O_3} + NH_3 = \underset{\text{Red corallin.}}{C_{19}H_{13}O_2NH_2} + H_2O.$$

Red corallin comes into commerce as peonin. "Spirit-soluble" if in the free state, and "water-soluble" as the ammonium salt.

In the first case it forms lumps with a metallic lustre, in the latter a brown-red porous mass. It dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid with a yellow colour.

The red solution of the ammonium salt is unaltered by alkalies, and is precipitated yellow by acids. Metallic salts, as basic acetate of lead, acetate of alumina, tin chloride, etc., produce orange-red or yellow precipitates.

Application.—Neither the red nor the yellow corallin are used in dyeing, as the yellow or red-orange shades produced are very unstable. It can be washed with water, but will not stand the action of either acids, alkalies, or light.

Somewhat better results are obtained in printing.

For printing on wool, the colour is thickened with gum water or glycerine, and a little magnesia or zinc oxide added, to overcome the action of acids. The colours can be steamed.

For printing on silk, the colour is prepared by dissolving the tin lake in oxalic acid.

For calico-printing, the same receipt can be used as for wool, only albumen is substituted for the gum water.

Detection on the fibre.—The reaction with dilute acids (yellow) is characteristic. Alkalies and ammonia produce red solutions, which do not fluoresce. Chloride of lime decolourises immediately.

(*d*) PHTHALEÏNS.

Crude materials.—The crude materials for the preparation of the phthaleïns are the phenols and phthalic acid or its anhydride.

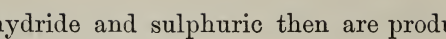
Phthalic acid is a dibasic acid, possessing the formula $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \nearrow COOH \\ \searrow COOH \end{smallmatrix}$, in which the carboxyl groups are in the ortho position to each other. It forms colourless leaflets, which are soluble in water, and melt at 213°.

On a large scale, phthalic acid is prepared from naphthalene, $C_{10}H_8$. This is treated with chlorine gas, or with chlorate of potash and hydrochloric acid, when a chlorine addition product, naphthalene tetrachloride, $C_{10}H_8Cl_4$, is first formed. This is oxidised with nitric acid, and the impure phthalic acid obtained yields phthalic anhydride and water on sublimation.

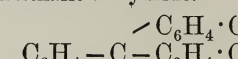
Phthalic anhydride, $C_6H_4 \begin{smallmatrix} \nearrow CO \searrow \\ \searrow CO \nearrow \end{smallmatrix} O$, forms long, white needles, m.p. 127°, B.P. 284·5°. It dissolves in water with re-formation of phthalic acid.

Reactions of phthalic acid and phenols.—If a phenol is heated with phthalic anhydride, a combination takes place, with elimination of water. At a moderate temperature, two molecules of the phenol unite with one molecule of phthalic anhydride, forming a "phthaleïn." At higher temperatures with one molecule of each, a derivative of anthracene is formed. From phenol, C_6H_5OH, phthalic

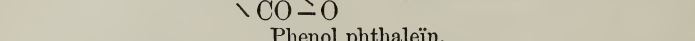
anhydride and sulphuric then are produced, according to the temperature.



Phthalic anhydride. Phenol.

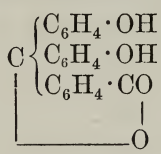


Phenol phthaleïn.



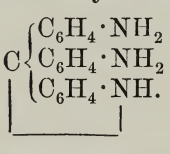
Phthalic anhydride Phenol. Oxyanthraquinon.

The formula of phenol phthaleïn is better expressed as—

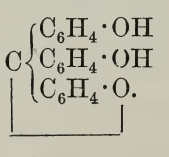


The phthaleïns are, therefore, along with rosaniline and rosolic acids, derivatives of triphenylmethane, $C(C_6H_5)_3H$.

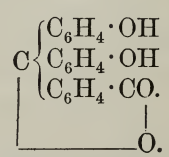
The relation between these groups of colouring matters is shown by the constitutional formulæ :—



Pararosaniline.

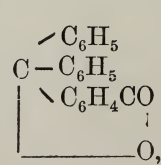


Aurin.

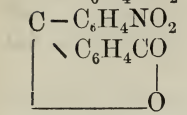


Phenol phthaleïn.

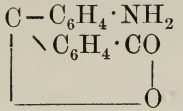
A confirmation of this formula is obtained as follows :— Diphenyl phthalid—



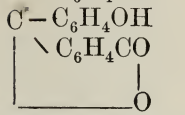
gives successively—



Dinitrodiphenyl phthalid.



Diamidodiphenyl phthalid.

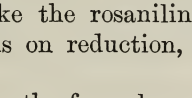


Phenol phthaleïn.

if it is warmed with nitric acid, the product reduced with zinc and hydrochloric acid, and the dilute aqueous solution heated with nitrite of soda and sulphuric acid.

The phthaleïns, like the rosanilines and rosolic acids, give leuco compounds on reduction, which are known as phthalins.

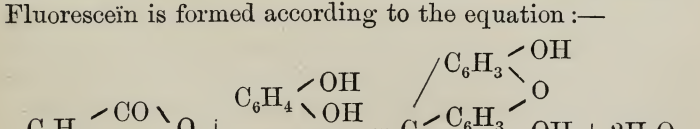
Phenol phthalin has the formula—



The phthaleïns of resorcin and pyrogallol are the only ones of commercial importance.

Fluoresceïn, Eosin.

Fluoresceïn, $C_{20}H_{12}O_5$.—All the colouring matters known as eosins are derived from fluoresceïn, an anhydride of resorcin phthaleïn. To prepare it, the molecular proportions of phthalic anhydride and resorcin are heated to 195°—200° till no more steam is evolved, and the mass has become solid. The melt is cooled, and pulverised, and serves as crude fluoresceïn for the preparation of the eosins. Fluoresceïn is formed according to the equation :—

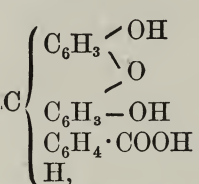


Phthalic anhydride. Resorcin. Fluoresceïn.

Pure fluoresceïn forms a yellowish-red crystalline powder, which is sparingly soluble in cold water, with a yellow colour. It is a weak acid, being displaced in its salts by acetic acid.

Its alkaline solution possesses a bright green fluorescence, which is so intense that 1 part dissolved in alkali, and diluted with 2,000,000 parts of water, still shows a fluorescence. Whole rivers may be coloured for a time with a single kilogram. This property has been made use of for determining the course of rivers which sink for a time into the ground. Thus it has been proved by this means that there is an underground connection between the Danube and the Ach, a small river which flows into the Lake of Constance.

By warming with soda and zinc powder it is reduced to fluorescin—



the alkaline solution of which is gradually oxidised in the air to fluoresceïn.

Fluoresceïn dyes silk and wool yellow, but is seldom used in dyeing, as the colours are not fast. It forms insoluble lakes with lead, silver, etc., which being non-poisonous, may be used for colouring toys, india-rubber goods, etc.

From fluoresceïn, two series of commercial dye-stuffs are derived. The first comprises the unsubstituted ethers of fluoresceïn, and the other, the nitro and halogen derivatives and their ethers, which are generally called eosins.

Chrysolin.

Benzyl fluoresceïn, $C_{20}H_{10}O_3(OC_7H_7)OH$, is produced by heating phthalic acid, benzyl resorcin ($C_6H_4 \cdot OC_7H_7 \cdot OH$)

and sulphuric acid. Its sodium salt is the chrysolin of commerce.

Chrysolin is a reddish-brown powder; the larger pieces possess a greenish reflex. It dissolves in water and alcohol with a green fluorescence. From the solutions, acids precipitate free benzyl fluoresceïn.

With stannous chloride and with lead-salts, it gives beautifully coloured lakes.

On silk and wool it yields a fast yellow, very similar to that produced with turmeric. It is used in cotton-dyeing for topping quercitron-yellow, the quercitron itself acting as a mordant for benzyl fluoresceïn.

Eosins.

Tetrabromfluoresceïn, $C_{20}H_8Br_4O_5$.—If a dilute solution of fluoresceïn in soda is mixed with the calculated quantity of bromine dissolved in soda, and then dilute hydrochloric acid is added, free fluoresceïn is first precipitated, but this unites immediately with the liberated bromine. The precipitate is filtered, pressed, neutralised with soda or potash, and the solution evaporated to dryness.

The product comes into commerce as eosin yellow shade, soluble eosin, or eosin J. The pure re-crystallised potash salt has the formula $C_{20}H_6Br_4O_5K_2+6\,H_2O$. It forms a red powder, or red crystals with yellowish-green reflex. One part dissolves completely in 2 to 3 parts of water; it is not easily soluble in absolute alcohol.

Its dilute aqueous solutions are rose coloured, with an intense green fluorescence; alcohol renders the fluorescence still more intense. Free tetrabromfluoresceïn is nearly insoluble in water, while its reddish-yellow alcoholic solution shows no fluorescence. It is a pretty strong acid, its salts not being decomposed by acetic acid.

It combines with metallic oxides, producing sparingly

soluble or insoluble lakes. They are prepared by mixing aqueous solutions of metallic salts and eosins, when they separate as amorphous, bright-coloured precipitates. Silver and lead salts give red, aluminium, zinc, tin, cobalt, iron, manganese and bismuth salts give reddish-yellow lakes.

Tetraiodfluoresceïn, $C_{20}H_8I_4O_5$, is prepared in a similar manner to tetrabromfluoresceïn. Its alkaline salts are sold as eosin blue shade (soluble in water), eosin B, erythrosin, pyrosin R, soluble primrose. Its aqueous solutions are not fluorescent, otherwise it resembles eosin J.

Aureosin J is a chlorinated fluoresceïn.

Bromnitrofluoresceïns are produced by the action of dilute nitric acid on tetrabromfluoresceïn. Their salts are known in commerce as eosin BN or safrosin.

A mixture of bromnitrofluoresceïn with di- and tetranitrofluoresceïn is known as lutécienne. Rubeosin is a nitrochlorofluoresceïn obtained by the action of nitric acid on aureosin.

The alcohol-soluble eosins are substitution products of the methyl, ethyl, and ethers of fluoresceïn.

The methyl and ethyl ethers of tetrabromfluoresceïn are produced by heating tetrabromfluoresceïn with wood spirit or ethyl alcohol, and sulphuric acid. They may also be produced by heating eosin with methyl or ethyl bromide. Their potassium salts—

$$C_{20}H_6Br_4O_3\begin{cases}OCH_3\\OK\end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad C_{20}H_6Br_4O_3\begin{cases}OC_2H_5\\OK,\end{cases}$$

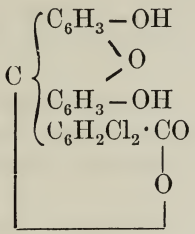
are commercial products under the names, *eosin* soluble in spirit, *ethyl eosin*, *methyl eosin*, *spirit primrose*, *rose JB*.

They are sparingly soluble in water, but dissolve easily in alcohol of 50 per cent., while they are insoluble in absolute alcohol. The dilute solutions possess a beautiful fluorescence.

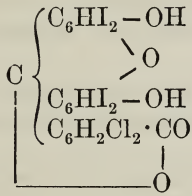
These eosins contain the substituted halogen atoms in

the resorcin rest. Eosins may also be prepared containing the halogen atoms in the phthalic-acid rest.

Dichlorphthalic acid acts on resorcin, producing dichlorfluoresceïn :—



Rose Bengale is the sodium salt of tetraioddichlorfluoresceïn :—



Phloxin is the potassium salt of tetrabromdichlorfluoresceïn, and cyanosine is the potassium salt of the methyl ether of phloxin.

Reactions of the eosins.—The fluorescence of the eosins is most intense in alcoholic solutions. It is the brightest in the "alcohol-soluble eosins," then comes eosin G. Safrosine fluoresces very little, somewhat more in presence of ammonia, while eosin B does not fluoresce at all in aqueous solution and very little in alcoholic solution.

The eosins dissolve in cold concentrated sulphuric acid with a yellow colour, which generally becomes darker on heating. Eosin G and BN are turned dark red, and on adding water, a new colouring matter separates in dark flakes. On heating eosin B with sulphuric acid, iodine separates out.

Hydrochloric acid separates from eosin solutions the free fluoresceïns. Eosin G gives a yellow, eosin B an orange-red, safrosin a yellow-brown, and spirit-soluble eosin a beautiful red, precipitate.

Metallic salts give coloured precipitates.

Chloride of lime decolourises the solutions on heating.

With the exception of eosin B, all eosins may be recognised by their fluorescence, especially in presence of ammonia. The reactions with sulphuric and hydrochloric acids are also characteristic.

The recognition of eosin B, and the separation of the colouring matters, is best carried out by the reactions with zinc powder and ammonia. The iodine is thus removed from eosin B, and the fluoresceïn produced is reduced to colourless fluorescin, which on oxidation in the air yields fluoresceïn.

Eosin G does not lose any bromine, but is reduced to colourless tetrabromfluorescin, which yields the original tetrabromfluoresceïn.

Eosin BN is reduced to colourless fluorescin, and the nitro groups are simultaneously reduced; on oxidation a non-fluorescent cherry-red solution is produced.

The "spirit-soluble" methyl and ethyl eosins react in the same way as eosin G.

The oxidation of the reduced solutions in the air takes place immediately only with safrosin; the other colouring matters require to stand a longer time. Characteristic colourations are obtained by proceeding as follows:—

A small quantity of the very dilute aqueous solution of the colouring matter is mixed with a few drops of ammonia and zinc powder till completely decolourised, filtered, and the filtrate boiled till the excess of ammonia is removed, and a precipitate of zinc hydrate is produced. Then hydrochloric acid is added till the precipitate redissolves, when the liquid is treated with excess of ammonia.

The following table of reactions will be understood without further explanation :—

	Original dilute solution.	Filtrate immediately after boiling with Zn. and NH_3.	After oxidation by boiling, etc.
Eosin G.	Cherry-red, yellow-green fluorescence.	Nearly colourless.	Cherry-red, yellowish-green fluorescence.
Eosin B.	Cherry-red, without fluorescence.	Nearly colourless.	Yellow, with strong green fluorescence.
Eosin BN.	Cherry-red, yellowish-green fluorescence.	Cherry-red, non-fluorescent.	Cherry-red, non-fluorescent.
Alcohol-soluble Eosin.	Cherry-red, strong green fluorescence.	Nearly colourless.	Cherry-red, yellow-green fluorescence.

The eosins also give characteristic colour reactions, when a small quantity is boiled with strong potash lye (containing 20 to 40 per cent. of solid KOH).

Eosin G gives in the cold an orange-red solution, which on boiling becomes purple-red, violet, and pure blue, with a *strong* green fluorescence. The colour and fluorescence are unaltered on dilution, if the boiling has been continued long enough.

Eosin B, on boiling with potash, first turns purple-red and then blue-violet, with a weak, green fluorescence. On dilution the solution becomes purple-red.

Eosin BN becomes lighter and yellower with potash, and on boiling turns olive-green, without fluorescence.

Spirit-soluble eosins are insoluble in the concentrated lye; on boiling the same reactions as with eosin G gradually take place.

Application.—Eosins yield bright shades on silk, wool, and cotton, comprising all the shades from a reddish-orange to a cherry-red and purple. The bluest shades are

produced by rose Bengale; then come safrosin, phloxine, and eosin B, and the methyl and ethyl eosins. The yellowest is eosin G.

Safrosin is very bright on wool, but is surpassed on silk by the other bluish eosins. The spirit-soluble eosins are brighter than those soluble in water, but they are not often used, as they are more expensive. It is necessary to dissolve them for use in methylated spirits, and the colours produced have a strong fluorescence, which is seldom desirable.

Silk is dyed in boiled-off liquor, and brightened with acetic or tartaric acid.

Wool is dyed with alum or acetic acid. A good result is obtained by the sulphur mordant, as applied in dyeing methyl-green.

Cotton is mordanted with alumina or stannate of soda for yellow shades, with lead-salts for blue shades. In mordanting with alumina, the cotton is first passed through a hot strong solution of soap, and after squeezing through a solution of aluminium acetate at about 12° Tw. Oleate, palmitate or stearate of alumina is thus precipitated on the fibre, which now takes up the dye very readily.

Eosins are often used mixed with other colouring matters, such as red, yellow, and violet, and mixtures of this kind are sometimes sold as commercial products. Nopaline, or Imperial red, contains Martius yellow, while coccine contains aurantia.

Safrosin, when mixed with yellow colouring matters, is sold as cochineal substitute, and yields a scarlet very similar to cochineal-scarlet.

Detection on the fibre.—Warm water removes a trace of the colouring matter, especially if a little ammonia is added, from goods dyed with eosins soluble in water. Spirit-soluble eosins are not affected by water, but alcohol removes them, and leaves the eosins soluble in water on the fibre.

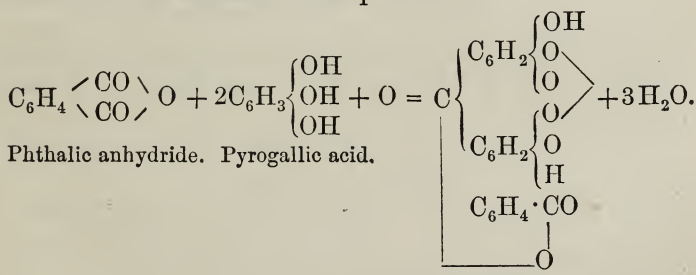
Concentrated potash solution gives the reactions described above. Hydrochloric acid or acidulated stannous chloride decolourise or turn the fabric yellow. Sulphuric acid turns them yellow, chloride of lime decolourises on warming.

The colours produced on cotton, are not so fast as on wool or silk. They are not fast to light.

Galleïn and *Coeruleïn.*

Galleïn, $C_{20}H_{10}O_7$, is obtained by heating phthalic anhydride and pyrogallic acid to 190°—200° till a solid mass is formed. The melt is boiled with water, dissolved in sodium carbonate, filtered, and the colouring matter precipitated with an acid.

A combination of phthalic anhydride and pyrogallic acid takes place with elimination of water, but at the same time an oxidation takes place :—



Phthalic anhydride. Pyrogallic acid. Galleïn.

Galleïn forms either a brown-red powder or green metallic crystals, which are almost insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol. It is a weak acid, forming a blue solution with alkalies. Its alkaline solution assumes a dirty colour on standing. It dissolves in ammonia with a violet colour, which solution gives violet precipitates with metallic salts.

Galleïn is very little used in dyeing. On mordanted cotton, it produces fast violet shades. Lead mordants give a fine grey-violet.

On wool, mordanted with potassium bichromate, it dyes shades similar to those produced with orchil.

In calico-printing, it has been superseded by the fast alizarin-violet. It may be fixed, like coeruleïn, with chromium acetate.

Galleïn is most important as a raw material for the preparation of coeruleïn.

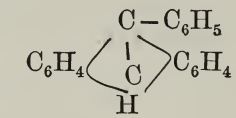
Coeruleïn.

Galleïn is heated to 200° with twenty times its weight of strong sulphuric acid, when the red colour gradually changes to a brownish green. The mixture is cooled and poured into water, and the black precipitate washed and dried.

The formation of coeruleïn is expressed by the equation—

$$\underset{\text{Galleïn.}}{C_{20}H_{10}O_7} - H_2O = \underset{\text{Coeruleïn.}}{C_{20}H_8O_6}.$$

Its constitution has not been determined with certainty, but according to Buchka, it is a derivative of phenyl anthracene—



and thus belongs to the anthracene colours.

Properties.—Dry coeruleïn forms an amorphous, almost black mass. It is nearly insoluble in water, alcohol and ether. The best solvent is acetic acid. Commercial coeruleïn forms a thick, dark-coloured paste. It dissolves in alkalies with a beautiful green colour. This solution gives with mordants very stable lakes. On warming with ammonia and zinc powder, a brown-red solution is formed, containing coerulin, the phthalin of coeruleïn. The solution is oxidised in the air, the original green colour being restored. It may be used for dyeing as a coeruleïn vat, and acts in the same way as the indigo vat.

Bisulphite compound. — On stirring the commercial coeruleïn paste with a concentrated solution of sodium bisulphite, $NaHSO_3$, a colourless compound of coeruleïn and bisulphite is formed, which can be removed from the unaltered coeruleïn by extracting with cold alcohol. The best proportions are one molecule of coeruleïn to two molecules of bisulphite.

Sulphurous acid or ammonium bisulphite act in a similar manner.

The coeruleïn sulphite does not contain a reduced colouring matter, but is a double compound, analogous to those formed with aldehydes and ketones. It is colourless, and soluble in water and alcohol. On boiling, the greenish-yellow solution turns green, and becomes alkaline, sulphurous acid being evolved. Acids and alkalies decompose coeruleïn sulphite in the cold, with evolution of sulphurous acid.

Coeruleïn sulphite comes into commerce as coeruleïn S. It is easier to dye with than the paste. It forms a black powder, which dissolves in water with a dull green colour, the solution giving all the reactions of the solid compound. The pure compound may be obtained by crystallising coeruleïn from alcohol.

Application.—Coeruleïn is used in largest quantities for dyeing or printing cotton fabrics. With chromium mordants it gives a very fast, but dull olive-green, which however in point of fastness equals the alizarin colours. Other green dyes, such as chrome-green (Guignet's green) and aniline-green, are brighter, but not nearly so fast.

For printing with coeruleïn S, the latter is mixed with chromium acetate, and thickened, and fixed by steaming. If insoluble coeruleïn is used, it is previously rendered soluble by the addition of sodium bisulphite.

In wool-dyeing, coeruleïn also gives excellent results. It may be used for this purpose either in the form of the bisulphite compound or as the paste. The most effective mordant for wool is bichromate of potash (3%), and sul-

phuric acid (1%). The shades obtained resemble woaded greens. Coeruleïn can also be used along with many of the natural colouring matters and with the alizarins, by which means a large variety of fast shades can be produced.

Detection on the fibre.—The colour is not removed by boiling soap or caustic alkalies. Concentrated hydrochloric acid darkens the colour. The most characteristic reaction is the action of a warm, acid solution of stannous chloride, which turns the fibre brown-red, coerulin being formed. On washing with water, or better still, with very dilute chloride of lime solution, the original colour is restored.

(*e*) INDOPHENOLES.

These colouring matters are produced by the simultaneous oxidation of a phenol and a paradiamine. This process resembles the manufacture of safranine, the only difference being that a phenol is oxidised with a paradiamine instead of a monamine with a paradiamine.

The following substances are used in the manufacture of indophenoles :—

Phenol	Paraphenylenediamine
Resorcin	Dimethylparaphenylene diamine.
Orcin	
Alpha- and beta-naphthol	

Preparation.—Commercial indophenol is prepared as follows :—One molecule of nitrosodimethylaniline—

$$C_6H_4 \cdot NO \cdot N(CH_3)_2,$$

is reduced in aqueous solution to dimethylparaphenylene diamine, $C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2 \cdot N(CH_3)_2$, filtered, and mixed with a solution of two molecules of alpha-naphthol dissolved in soda. Bichromate of potash is then added, and acetic acid is gradually run in until the liquid shows an acid reaction, when the colouring matter is precipitated.

Properties.—Indophenol comes into commerce as a blue paste or powder (indophenol N). The dried paste has a coppery lustre, and very much resembles Guatemala indigo in appearance. It sublimes in needles.

It dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid, with a dingy yellow colour. It is insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol, with a blue colour. Alkalies are without action on the solutions, acids colour them yellow.

Indophenol is reduced by glucose and caustic soda, forming a vat which resembles the indigo vat. This solution contains leucoindophenol, which is also a commercial article (indophenol-white, or indophenol preparation), and forms a white paste soluble in pure and in acidified water.

Application.—Indophenol gives very beautiful indigo-blue shades on cotton and wool. It is perfectly fast to light and bleaching powder, but even weak acids decolourise it.

For printing on cotton, a mixture of indophenol and stannous hydrate (from stannous chloride and soda) is warmed with acetic acid until decolourised. It is then thickened with tragacanth, printed and steamed. The development of the leucoindophenol in the air is very slow, and it is therefore more advantageous to develop the colour in a bath of bichromate.

For dyeing wool and cotton, indophenol-white is dyed in neutral or slightly acid solution, and the colour subsequently developed with bichromate or chloride of lime.

Detection on the fibre.—The reaction with dilute acids is most characteristic. A 10 per-cent. solution of hydrochloric acid turns it grey-brown or dark grey, while other colouring matters are scarcely altered.

III. The Azo Dyes.

The azo dyes form a well-defined and well-studied group of the coal-tar colours. Their chemical constitution has been clearly proved in every case as far as possible in accordance with our present knowledge of chemistry. All the azo dyes may be prepared according to one general method, viz., by acting on diazo compounds with phenoles or amines of the aromatic series.

Diazo compounds are formed (as stated on several previous occasions) when primary amines of the aromatic series are treated with nitrous acid. In order to be able to understand the manufacture of the azo dyes properly, it will be necessary to know something of the properties of these compounds.

If nitrous fumes, obtained by heating starch with nitric acid possessing a specific gravity of 1·30 to 1·35, are passed into an aqueous solution of nitrate of aniline, the following equation is fulfilled :—

$$\underset{\text{Nitrate of aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2\cdot HNO_3} + HNO_2 = \underset{\text{Nitrate of diazobenzene.}}{C_6H_5-N=N\cdot NO_3} + 2H_2O.$$

A similar reaction takes place if a solution of aniline hydrochloride is treated first with hydrochloric acid and then with sodium nitrite, in the proportions indicated in the equation :—

$$\underset{\text{Aniline hydrochloride.}}{C_6H_5NH_2\cdot HCl} + HCl + NaNO_2 =$$

$$\underset{\text{Diazobenzene chloride.}}{C_6H_5N=N\cdot Cl} + NaCl + 2H_2O.$$

If nitrous fumes are passed into an alcoholic solution of aniline a diazo compound is likewise formed, which

is known as diazoamidobenzene, and has the formula $C_6H_5N=N\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5$. The formation of this compound is easily explained by supposing the equation to be fulfilled in two phases :—

$$\underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2} + HO\cdot NO = \underset{\text{Free diazobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N=N\cdot OH} + H_2O. \quad (1.)$$

The diazobenzene acts in the nascent state on a second molecule of aniline, thus :—

$$\underset{\text{Diazobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N=N\cdot OH} + \underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2} = \underset{\text{Diazoamidobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N=N\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5} + H_2O. \quad (2.)$$

The formulae given in these equations for—

Diazobenzene nitrate, $C_6H_5N=N\cdot NO_3$,
Diazobenzene chloride, $C_6H_5N=N\cdot Cl$,
Diazoamidobenzene, $C_6H_5N=N\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5$,
Diazobenzene, $C_6H_5N=N\cdot OH$,

are typical as representatives of this group, which latter can therefore be characterised in the following manner :—

"Diazo compounds are bodies which contain the diatomic group $-N=N-$, which is bound on one side to a carbon atom, the other bond being saturated with oxygen, nitrogen, chlorine, bromine, etc."

Most of the diazo compounds crystallise well and are colourless, with the exception of the diazoamido compounds, which are either yellow or red. When heated they detonate with extreme violence. The diazo compounds decompose very easily. Thus free diazobenzene decomposes immediately when separated from its salts. The stability of the compounds is, however, increased by the introduction of electro-negative groups into the benzene ring. Thus diazonitrophenol can be kept in the free state without undergoing any change.

If aqueous solutions of the salts of diazo compounds are heated, decomposition ensues along with the evolution of nitrogen gas and formation of resinous and other products. If, however, the solution is acidulated before boiling, a phenol is the chief product of the reaction; e.g.:—

$$\underset{\text{Diazobenzene nitrate.}}{C_6H_5 \cdot N = N \cdot NO_3} + H_2O = \underset{\text{Phenol.}}{C_6H_5OH} + N_2 + HNO_3.$$

The fact that the diazo compounds are so easily decomposed, along with the great danger of keeping large quantities of such explosive substances, would render their application in the manufacture of coal-tar colours prohibitive, should it be necessary to prepare them in the dry state. This can, however, be avoided by preparing them in very dilute solutions, from which the azo bodies can be separated directly without isolating the diazo compounds.

The *azo compounds* also contain the diatomic group $-N=N-$, which is, however, bound on either side to a carbon atom. The simplest representative of this class of bodies is known as azobenzene, and has the formula—

$$C_6H_5N = NC_6H_5.$$

It forms orange crystals, which melt at 66·5° and boil at 293°. It is insoluble in water, but dissolves easily in alcohol and ether.

Azobenzene and its homologues can be obtained by reduction of the nitro derivatives of the corresponding hydrocarbons. The best reducing agents are sodium amalgam or zinc and alcoholic potash.* In the case of nitrobenzene, the reaction takes place according to the equation:—

$$\underset{\text{Nitrobenzene.}}{2C_6H_6NO_2} + 4H_2 = \underset{\text{Azobenzene.}}{C_6H_5 \cdot N = N \cdot C_6H_5} + 4H_2O.$$

* According to a recent publication, an alkaline solution of stannous hydrate is said to give the best results.

The simple azo compounds are for the most part brightly-coloured bodies; but they are no colouring matters, since they do not possess the property of combining with either acids or bases.

The azo dyes are amido- or hydroxyl-derivatives of the simple azo compounds, and are distinguished as amidoazo and oxyazo dyes. From azobenzene, for instance, the following representatives of these two groups may be derived:—

$C_6H_5N = N \cdot C_6H_4NH_2$, Amidoazobenzene (aniline-yellow).
$C_6H_5N = N \cdot C_6H_4OH$, Oxyazobenzene.

For dyeing, the amidoazo dyes can either be used as such, or in the form of their sulphonic acids, while the oxyazo dyes nearly always contain sulpho groups. It is for this reason that the azo dyes have been divided below into *three* groups.

The azo dyes are never prepared in practice from the simple azo compounds, although this would be possible in one or two cases. Thus, amidoazobenzene can be obtained by nitrating azobenzene, which yields nitroazobenzene, $C_6H_5N=NC_6H_4 \cdot NO_2$, and this, when reduced, yields amidoazobenzene. The general method mentioned above, i.e., allowing diazo compounds to act on phenoles or amines, has not only the advantage of being easily carried out, but also allows a larger number of combinations to be made.

The following example, the preparation of dimethylamidoazobenzene, may serve to illustrate the reaction:—

$$\underset{\text{Diazobenzene chloride.}}{C_6H_5 \cdot N = NCl} + \underset{\text{Dimethylaniline.}}{C_6H_5N(CH_3)_2} =$$

$$\underset{\text{Dimethylamidoazobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N = N \cdot C_6H_4N(CH_3)_2} + HCl.$$

If aniline and diazobenzene hydrochloride are allowed to act on each other in a similar manner, the reaction

is somewhat different, diazoamidobenzene being first formed :—

$$\underset{\text{Diazobenzene chloride.}}{C_6H_5N=NCl} + \underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2} = \underset{\text{Diazoamidobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N=N\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5} + HCl.$$

This latter product soon passes over, however, into the isomeric amidoazobenzene, especially in the presence of a small quantity of aniline hydrochloride :—

$$\underset{\text{Diazoamidobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N=N\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5} = \underset{\text{Amidoazobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N=N\cdot C_6H_4NH_2}.$$

In all cases hitherto noticed of amines or phenoles combining with diazo compounds, the amido or hydroxyl group invariably assumes the para position with respect to the $-N=N-$ group.

Of the general reactions of the azo compounds, we will only mention here their behaviour towards energetic reducing agents. The latter split up the azo compound into two halves, and at the same time transform the $-N=N-$ group into two amido groups; e.g. :—

$$\underset{\text{Amidoazobenzene.}}{C_6H_5N=N\cdot C_6H_4NH_2} + 2H_2 = \underset{\text{Aniline.}}{C_6H_5NH_2} + \underset{\text{Paraphenylene-diamine.}}{C_6H_4(NH_2)_2}.$$

(*a*) AMIDOAZO DYES.

Only three technical products belong to this group, viz., aniline-yellow, chrysoidine and phenylene-brown. The colour-bases contained in them are all derived from azobenzene, $C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_5$, and they form the following series :—

$C_6H_5\cdot N=N\cdot C_6H_4NH_2$, Amidoazobenzene.
$C_6H_5\cdot N=N\cdot C_6H_3(NH_2)_2$, Diamidoazobenzene.
$NH_2C_6H_4\cdot N=N\cdot C_6H_3(NH_2)_2$, Triamidoazobenzene.

The affinity of these bases to acids, and at the same time their fastness on the fibre, is proportionate to the

number of amido groups they contain; thus, phenylene-brown is faster than chrysoidine, and this again is faster than aniline-yellow.

It is a characteristic of these dyes that the aqueous solutions of their hydrochlorides are precipitated by alkalies and ammonia, and reddened by strong acids.

Aniline-yellow.

Aniline-yellow, or amidoazobenzene hydrochloride, $C_6H_5N=N\cdot C_6H_4NH_2HCl$, can be obtained by mixing dilute aqueous solutions of diazobenzene chloride and aniline.

In the pure state, it forms bluish-violet, lustrous needles, which dissolve in acidulated water with a fine red colour. If the solution is heated, the salt is decomposed and the free base is precipitated. Free *amidoazobenzene* can be completely precipitated from solutions of its salts by ammonia. In the pure state it forms yellow crystals, which melt at 127·5°, and can be volatilised without decomposition. It is insoluble in water, but dissolves in alcohol.

In acid solutions of aniline-yellow, silk is dyed red, the salt itself being assimilated by the fibre. But on washing with water, the salt is decomposed and only the free base remains on the fibre, to which latter it imparts a yellow colour.

Aniline-yellow is at present not used on the large scale, since it is not at all fast and easily volatilises when steamed.

Chrysoidine.

Chrysoidine, or diamidoazobenzene hydrochloride, $C_6H_5N=N\cdot C_6H_3(NH_2)_2\cdot HCl$, is formed when an aqueous solution of metaphenylenediamine is poured into a very dilute solution of diazobenzene chloride:—

$$C_6H_5N=N\cdot Cl + C_6H_4(NH_2)_2 =$$
Diazobenzene. Phenylenediamine.

$$C_6H_5N=N\cdot C_6H_3(NH_2)_2HCl.$$
Chrysoidine.

Chrysoidine separates out as a sparingly soluble precipitate.

Metaphenylenediamine may be obtained in a comparatively pure state by first converting benzene by means of concentrated nitric and sulphuric acids into dinitrobenzene, $C_6H_4(NO_2)_2$, and reducing this compound with iron and hydrochloric acid. It forms white crystals, which dissolve easily in water, and melt at 63°.

The chrysoidine of commerce usually consists of dark violet crystals, having a metallic reflex, which dissolve easily and without decomposition in boiling water and in absolute alcohol. From the orange-coloured solution, ammonia or caustic soda throw down a bright yellow precipitate, which consists of the free colour-base. Chrysoidine contains two amido groups, and is therefore also capable of combining with two equivalents of an acid. The salts formed are, however, not at all stable. The fact that solutions of chrysoidine are turned yellow by excess of hydrochloric acid is due to the formation of these abnormal salts. In very thin layers, these solutions appear crimson. Concentrated sulphuric acid dissolves chrysoidine with a yellowish-brown colour.

Stannous chloride decolourises in the cold. Basic lead acetate produces an orange precipitate.

Silk is dyed in a neutral soap-bath, wool in pure water. Cotton is mordanted with tannin and tartar emetic. The solution of the dye should be filtered before use.

Detection on the fibre.—A solution of stannous chloride in hydrochloric acid decolourises completely. Hydrochloric acid turns the colour red; ammonia, bright yellow; concentrated sulphuric acid is coloured yellow.

Phenylene-brown.

(Bismarck-brown, Vesuvine, Cinnamon-brown, Canelle.)

Phenylene-brown is a hydrochloride of triamidoazobenzene, possessing the formula :—

$$C_6H_4\begin{<}{}^{NH_2}_{N=N-}\ C_6H_3\cdot\begin{<}{}^{NH_2}_{NH_2}\cdot 2\,HCl.$$

The colour-base is formed by the action of nitrous acid on an aqueous solution of free metaphenylenediamine, according to the equation :—

$$2\,C_6H_4(NH_2)_2 + HNO_2 =$$

Phenylenediamine.

$$C_6H_4\begin{<}{}^{NH_2}_{N=N-}\ C_6H_3\cdot\begin{<}{}^{NH_2}_{NH_2} + 2\,H_2O.$$

Triamidoazobenzene.

The precipitate, which still contains considerable quantities of bye-products, is washed, converted into the hydrochloride, and purified.

The commercial product forms a dark powder. It contains a certain amount of bye-products insoluble in water, which should be removed by filtration before use.

The free colour-base is somewhat soluble in boiling water. It can be obtained by the addition of ammonia or caustic alkali to the colour solution, in the form of a brown voluminous precipitate; when purified by recrystallisation, it forms small crystals, which melt at 137°. Although it contains three amido groups, it will not combine with more than two equivalents of acid to form stable salts. But if an excess of hydrochloric acid is added to the solution it is coloured red, owing to the formation of a salt containing three equivalents of acid. Phenylene-brown dissolves in water and alcohol with a brown colour; the solution in sulphuric acid is yellow-brown.

A mixture of stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid decolourises the aqueous solution. Basic acetate of lead produces a brown precipitate.

Phenylene-brown is used largely for dyeing leather, under various names, as vesuvine, cinnamon-brown, and Bismarck-brown. Wool is dyed without any addition, or with some Glauber's salts. The inferior qualities, which are generally used for dyeing leather, are best dissolved with the addition of a few drops of sulphuric acid. Bismarck-brown is also used for cotton which is mordanted either with tannin and tartar emetic, or with Turkey-red oil.

The red colouration produced with hydrochloric acid is the best test for this colouring matter on the fibre. Ammonia produces but little change, stannous chloride decolourises.

(*b*) AMIDOAZOSULPHONIC ACIDS.

The colouring matters of this class occur in commerce as alkali- or ammonia-salts. The aqueous solutions are precipitated by hydrochloric acid, in an excess of which the precipitate re-dissolves with a red colour. Ammonia and caustic soda do not produce any precipitates. Boiling alcohol does not strip the colour.

Acid-yellow.

(Fast Yellow.)

Manufacture.—Acid-yellow consists of the sodium salts of the sulphonic acids of amidoazobenzene or aniline-yellow. The product obtained by heating aniline-yellow with sulphuric acid, or by the action of aniline on diazobenzene-sulphonic acid, are almost identical.

In working according to the latter method, para-amidobenzene-sulphonic acid (sulphanilic acid), $C_6H_4NH_2SO_3H$, is first prepared by heating aniline with sulphuric acid. This is dissolved in a large quantity of water and treated

with sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid, when the following reaction takes place :—

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-NH_2\\-SO_3H\end{matrix} + NaNO_2 + HCl =$$

Sulphanilic acid.

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-N=N-\\-SO_3-\end{matrix}| + NaCl + 2H_2O.$$

Diazobenzene-sulphonic acid.*

The solution is now treated with aniline, when amidoazobenzene-sulphonic acid separates as a yellow precipitate :—

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-N=N-\\-SO_3-\end{matrix}| + C_6H_5NH_2 = C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-N=N\cdot C_6H_4NH_2.\\-SO_3H.\end{matrix}$$

Diazobenzene-sulphonic acid. Aniline. Amidoazobenzene-sulphonic acid.

The precipitate is dissolved in sodium carbonate and the colouring matter is salted out.

Properties.—Acid-yellow prepared in this manner possesses the formula $C_6H_4SO_3Na-N_2-C_6H_4NH_2$, while the one prepared from aniline-yellow consists of a mixture of the sodium-salts of isomeric mono- and di-sulphonic acids of amidoazobenzene.

Acid-yellow forms a yellow powder, which dissolves easily in water, but with difficulty in alcohol. On acidulating the aqueous solution with hydrochloric acid, the free amidoazobenzene-sulphonic acid is thrown down in the form of minute needles, which re-dissolve in excess of hydrochloric acid with a reddish-yellow colour (in thin layers crimson). This latter change of colour is no doubt owing to the formation of a salt having the composition—

$$C_6H_4SO_3H-N_2-C_6H_4NH_2\cdot HCl.$$

* The compound $C_6H_4N_2SO_3$ shown as diazobenzene-sulphonic acid is the anhydride of the normal sulphonic acid of diazobenzene—

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-N=NOH.\\-SO_3H.\end{matrix}$$

Ammonia and caustic alkalies do not effect any change, nor is the colouring matter precipitated by basic acetate of lead. Sulphuric acid dissolves acid-yellow with a yellow colour. Zinc powder decolourises; but if the colourless solution is filtered and allowed to stand in the air, the original colour is restored.

Application.—Acid-yellow is not often used for dyeing pure yellow, although it is comparatively fast as an aniline dye, and will stand steaming. The shade obtained with it is an almost pure yellow, and contains only a trace of red; but it is not sufficiently brilliant to be used alone. On the other hand, as its colour does not incline so much towards the red, it is well adapted for dyeing compound colours, such as olive, moss-green or brown, in the place of the natural yellow colouring matters hitherto used for this purpose. It is dyed in an acid-bath, and can therefore be combined with acid-magenta, indigo extract, fast red, etc.

Silk is dyed with boiled-off liquor, wool with sodium bisulphate, or alum and sulphuric acid. An excess of acid reddens the shade.

When dyed on the fibre, fast yellow is reddened by hydrochloric acid; ammonia has little action; a boiling solution of stannous chloride in hydrochloric acid decolourises.

Helianthin.

(Gold Orange, Orange III.)

This colouring matter is the ammonia-salt of dimethylaniline-azobenzene-sulphonic acid, and possesses the formula—

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-SO_3NH_4\\-N=N-\end{matrix}C_6H_4\cdot N\begin{matrix}\swarrow CH_3\\-CH_3.\end{matrix}$$

It is obtained by the action of dimethylaniline on diazobenzene-sulphonic acid.

Helianthin forms an orange-yellow powder, which

dissolves easily in hot water, but is only sparingly soluble in alcohol. Concentrated sulphuric acid dissolves it with a red-brown colour, which appears yellow in thin layers. With hydrochloric acid, ammonia, caustic alkali and stannous chloride, it shows the same reactions as aniline-yellow. Basic acetate of lead throws down all the colouring matter as an orange-yellow precipitate.

If small quantities of solutions of sodium chloride or magnesium sulphate are added to a dilute solution of helianthin, the colouring matter is precipitated in the form of minute crystals.

Application.—Helianthin produces on silk and wool a fiery orange. Both these materials are dyed in an acid-bath.

Helianthin is frequently used as an indicator in volumetric analysis. The light yellow colour of the solution is immediately turned red by the addition of a drop of hydrochloric acid.

Recognition on the fibre.—Hydrochloric acid turns it red, concentrated sulphuric acid yellow, while alkalies have no action.

Tropaeolin OO.

(Orange IV.)

This colouring matter is formed by the action of diazobenzene-sulphonic acid on diphenylamine:—

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-N=N-\\ SO_3\end{matrix}\!\!\rangle + C_6H_5NHC_6H_5 =$$

Diazobenzene-sulphonic acid. Diphenylamine.

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-N=N\cdot C_6H_4N-C_6H_5,\\ -SO_3H\end{matrix}\qquad (\text{H above the N})$$

Diphenylamine-azobenzene-sulphonic acid.

and is accordingly a phenylated acid-yellow. The commercial product is a potassium-salt.

Tropaeolin OO forms an orange-yellow crystalline

powder, which dissolves very easily in hot water, but is only sparingly soluble in cold water and in alcohol. In concentrated sulphuric acid it dissolves with a red-violet colour. A hot aqueous solution is turned violet by hydrochloric acid, and on cooling a precipitate of the same colour is formed. Caustic soda does not occasion any change in the hot aqueous solution.

The colouring matter yields a very fine golden yellow on silk or wool.

Fibres dyed with tropaeolin OO are turned blue-violet with sulphuric acid, red-violet with hydrochloric acid.

(*c*) OXYAZO DYES.

Since Peter Griess first published, in 1878, the results of his scientific investigations on the diazo- and azo-compounds, the manufacture of the oxyazo dyes has developed to such an extent that it forms at the present day almost the most important branch of the coal-tar colour industry. New products are constantly being brought into the market, which are as a rule superior to the older ones, either in point of brilliancy or fastness.

The immense number of colouring matters belonging to this group is easily accounted for, if we consider that every primary amine belonging to the aromatic series, after having been converted into a diazo compound, will combine with almost any phenol or derivative of a phenol (in which the hydrogen atom standing opposite the hydroxyl group is not substituted) to form an azo dye.

The oxyazo dyes yield different shades of yellow, orange, red, claret, and brown. The names according to which they are known in commerce usually correspond to the colour; e.g., orange (tropaeolin), scarlet, claret-red, etc. In order to distinguish between the shades, the capital letters G, GG, R, RR, etc., are used. Two samples bearing the same name and mark, but coming from different

works, are, however, not always identical, and the name of a colouring matter is therefore not sufficient to prove its chemical composition. Besides these names, which are derived from the colour of the dye, there are many fancy names in use.

The description of the azo dyes given in the following pages is by no means a complete one, and must only be taken as a short *résumé* of the same.

Raw Materials.

The raw materials requisite for the preparation of any azo dye are, as already mentioned, an amido compound and a phenol, or derivatives (generally sulphonic acids) of these bodies.

The following are the principal amines, phenoles and sulphonic acids used :—

1. Amines and Amidosulphonic Acids.

$C_6H_5NH_2$, Aniline.

$C_6H_4\begin{cases}CH_3\\NH_2\end{cases}$, Toluidine.

$C_6H_3\begin{cases}(CH_3)_2\\NH_2\end{cases}$, Xylidine.

$C_6H_2\begin{cases}C_2H_5\\CH_3\\CH_3\\NH_2\end{cases}$, Ethylxylidine.

$C_{10}H_7NH_2$, Alpha- and Beta-naphthylamines.

$C_6H_4\begin{cases}OCH_3\\NH_2\end{cases}$, Anisidine.

$C_6H_4\begin{cases}OC_2H_5\\NH_2\end{cases}$, Amidophenetol.

$C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_4NH_2$, Amidoazobenzene.

$C_6H_4\begin{cases}NH_2\\SO_3H\end{cases}$, Sulphanilic acid.

$C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}NH_2\\SO_3H\end{cases}$, Naphthionic acid.

$C_6H_4{-}N=N{-}C_6H_4NH_2$, Amidoazobenzene sulphonic acid (Acid-yellow) and isomers.
$\quad\quad\quad

fuming sulphuric acid and thus converted into nitro-naphthalene-sulphonic acid, $C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}NO_2\\SO_3H\end{cases}$, which is reduced with iron and hydrochloric acid to naphthylamine-sulphonic acid. According to the other method, naphthylamine is simply treated with fuming sulphuric acid. In either case, *two isomeric* sulphonic acids are obtained, one easily, the other sparingly soluble. They are generally separated before being used, and serve respectively for the preparation of easily-soluble and sparingly-soluble colouring matters.

The sparingly-soluble sulphonic acid crystallises in small lustrous needles. Its aqueous solutions are characterised by a beautiful fluorescence.

Naphthol-sulphonic acids.—Both alpha- and beta-naphthol can be converted into sulphonic acids when heated with concentrated sulphuric acid. If the temperature is kept below 100° the chief products of the reaction are monosulphonic acids, while at 100°—110° disulphonic acids are formed.

Beta-naphthol-monosulphonic acids, $C_{10}H_6SO_3H\cdot OH$.—By adding 100 kilos. of beta-naphthol as rapidly as possible to 200 kilos. of concentrated sulphuric acid (D. O. V.) and heating not higher than 50° or 60°, the chief product formed is the *beta-naphthol-alpha-sulphonic acid*, along with a small quantity of *ordinary beta-naphthol-sulphonic acid*, which latter would, on the other hand, form the chief product if the temperature were increased. Both acids are then transformed into soda-salts, as in the case of the disulphonic acids (see p. 190), and these are separated by treatment with alcohol, in which the salt of beta-naphthol-alpha-sulphonic acid is by far the most readily soluble of the two.

This acid is used in the preparation of croceïn-scarlet. When treated with nitric acid, it yields nitro derivatives, the alkali-salts of which are easily soluble in water, and form valuable colouring matters.

Beta-naphthol-disulphonic acids, $C_{10}H_5(SO_3H)_2OH$.—When beta-naphthol is heated with three times its weight of concentrated sulphuric acid to 100°—110°, two isomeric disulphonic acids are formed. The product is diluted with water, neutralised with milk of lime, and after some time filtered from the calcium sulphate which separates out. Sodium carbonate is then added to the liquid, which by double decomposition forms a precipitate of carbonate of lime and the sodium-salts of the disulphonic acids which remain in solution. This solution is generally used without further treatment for the preparation of colouring matters. The two sodium-salts can, however, easily be separated by evaporating to dryness and extracting with alcohol, when "salt G" is dissolved, while "salt R" remains behind.

Salt G yields the yellow shades, salt R the red shades, of the azo dyes for which they are used.

Manufacture of the Oxyazo Dyes.

The general method according to which all these colouring matters are prepared will be amply explained if we take xylidine-red (scarlet R) as an example. It should be mentioned here that the proportions of the different substances used correspond to the molecular weights shown in the equations.

For the preparation of about 20 kilos. of colouring matter, 5 kilos. of xylidine are dissolved in 300 litres of water and twice as much hydrochloric acid as would be necessary to transform the xylidine into its hydrochloride. An aqueous solution of the calculated quantity of sodium nitrite is then gradually added, the liquid being kept in constant agitation, in order to mix the liquids as rapidly as possible. In many works the liquid is cooled with ice, in order to prevent decomposition and the formation of resinous products. In this manner a neutral solution

of diazobenzene chloride is obtained, according to the equation :—

$$C_6H_3\begin{cases}(CH_3)_2\\NH_2\cdot HCl\end{cases} + HCl + NaNO_2 =$$

Xylidine hydrochloride.

$$C_6H_3\begin{cases}(CH_3)_2\\N=N\cdot Cl\end{cases} + NaCl + 2H_2O.$$

Diazoxylene chloride.

The liquid is now allowed to flow into another vessel of double the capacity, which contains beta-naphthol-disulphonate of soda and ammonia dissolved in 300 litres of water. Both liquids are mixed as rapidly as possible during the operation. The colouring matter is formed according to the equation :—

$$C_6H_3\begin{cases}(CH_3)_2\\N=N\cdot Cl\end{cases} + C_{10}H_5\begin{cases}OH\\(SO_3Na)_2\end{cases} + NH_3 =$$

Diazoxylene chloride. Beta-naphthol-disulphonate of soda.

$$C_6H_3\begin{cases}(CH_3)_2\\-N=N\cdot C_{10}H_4\end{cases}\begin{cases}OH\\(SO_3Na)_2\end{cases} + NH_4Cl.$$

Xylidine-red.

After standing some time, the liquid is heated to the boil with steam in order to separate some resinous impurities, after which it is filtered and the colouring matter salted out in the usual way. The precipitate is collected in a filter-press, pressed and ground with a small quantity of water, in order to remove the mother-liquors, after which it is pressed again, dried and ground.

Compounds which contain the azo group $-N=N-$ twice form a special branch of the oxyazo dyes. They are known as tetrazo dyes, and are divided into two classes, viz., the "secondary azo compounds" and the "dis-azo compounds."

Secondary azo compounds are obtained when amidoazo compounds, such as aniline-yellow or acid-yellow, are used in place of the simple amines. A colouring matter of this

kind would, for instance, be formed according to the following equations :—

1. $C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_4\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl + HCl + NaNO_2 =$
Amidoazobenzene hydrochloride.

$C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_4-N=N-Cl + NaCl + 2H_2O.$
Diazoazobenzene chloride.

2. $C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_4-N=N-Cl + C_{10}H_6\begin{matrix}-OH\\-SO_3Na\end{matrix} + NH_3 =$
Diazoazobenzene chloride. Naphthol sulphonate of soda.

$C_6H_5\cdot N=N\cdot C_6H_4\cdot N=N\cdot C_{10}H_5\begin{matrix}-OH\\-SO_3Na\end{matrix} + NH_4Cl.$
Azobenzene-azonaphthol-sulphonate of soda.

Disazo compounds.—Some of the polyatomic phenoles, like resorcin, $C_6H_4(OH)_2$, and phloroglucin, $C_6H_3(OH_3)$, combine with more than one molecule of a diazo compound. Thus, resorcin combines with two molecules of diazobenzene chloride to form a disazo compound having the formula—

$$C_6H_2\begin{cases}OH\\OH\\-N=N\cdot C_6H_5\\-N=N\cdot C_6H_5.\end{cases}$$

The following table (pp. 194, 195) contains all the most important oxyazo dyes which are or have been used on a large scale in practice.

The first column contains the amido compounds, which are first converted into the corresponding diazo compounds, and are then combined with the phenoles contained in the second column.

The third column shows the chemical composition and denomination of the oxyazo dyes formed; while the fourth column contains the commercial names of the colouring matters.

Resorcin-brown is a disazo compound, the constitution of which is not known. It is obtained by combining a diazo compound with resorcin in the ordinary way, and

acting on the azo compound formed with some other diazo compound.

If, for instance, diazobenzene chloride is allowed to act on resorcin so as to form resorcin-azobenzene, $C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_3(OH)_2$, and this is again acted upon by azonaphthalene chloride, $C_{10}H_7N=N\cdot Cl$, the body—

$$C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_2\begin{cases}OH\\OH\\-N=N\cdot C_{10}H_7\end{cases}$$

would be formed. Resorcin-brown most likely has an analogous composition.

Properties of the Oxyazo Dyes.

The commercial products are yellow, orange, scarlet or brown powders, which are either crystalline in themselves or can generally be crystallised from water or alcohol, or a mixture of the two. They are all soluble in water, and most of them will also dissolve in alcohol.

Their behaviour with concentrated sulphuric acid, in which all azo dyes dissolve with very intense colours, is especially characteristic. The colours of these solutions differ so widely that they form for a practised eye one of the most valuable means for distinguishing the colouring matters. Thus, the scarlets R, RR, 3R, S and SS dissolve in sulphuric acid with an *orange* colour, which appears *crimson* in thin layers.

Scarlet G and tropaeolin O yield *yellow* or *orange-yellow* solutions.

Biebrich-scarlet colours the acid *green;*

Crocëin-scarlet, *blue;* and

Tropaeolin 3O, or fast red, both yield a *violet.*

The reaction with concentrated sulphuric acid further enables us in many cases to obtain an idea of the constitution of a colouring matter. Thus the following

Amido compound.	Phenol.	Oxyazo compound.	Commercial name.
$C_6H_4 \begin{matrix} -NH_2 \\ -SO_3H \end{matrix}$ Sulphanilic acid.	C_6H_5OH Phenol.	$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N-C_6H_4OH$ Phenol-azobenzene-sulphonic acid.	Tropaeolin Y.
Do.	$C_6H_4 \begin{matrix} -OH \\ -OH \end{matrix}$ Resorcin.	$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N-C_6H_3(OH)-OH$ Resorcin-azobenzene-sulphonic acid.	Tropaeolin R. Tropaeolin O. Chrysoin.
Do.	$C_{10}H_7OH$ Alpha-naphthol.	$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N-C_{10}H_6OH$ Alpha-naphthol-azobenzene-sulphonic acid.	Tropaeolin 3O No. 1. Orangé I.
Do.	$C_{10}H_7OH$ Beta-naphthol.	$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N-C_{10}H_6OH$ Beta-naphthol-azobenzene-sulphonic acid.	Tropaeolin 3O No. 2. Orangé II. Mandarin.
$C_6H_5NH_2$ Aniline.	$C_{10}H_6(OH)SO_3H$ Beta-naphthol-sulphonic acid.	$C_6H_5-N=N-C_{10}H_5 \begin{matrix} -OH \\ -SO_3H \end{matrix}$ Benzene-azonapthol-sulphonic acid.	Tropaeolin 4 O.
Do.	$C_{10}H_5(OH)(SO_3H)_2$ Salt G.	$C_6H_5N=N\cdot C_{10}H_4(OH)(SO_3H)_2$ Benzene-azonaphthol-disulphonic acid.	Orange-yellow.
Do.	Mixture of both naphthol-disulphonic acids.	Benzene-azonaphthol-disulphonic acids.	Scarlet G.
$C_6H_4(CH_3)(NH_2)$ Toluidine.	Do.	$C_6H_4(CH_3)-N=N-C_{10}H_4(OH)(SO_3H)_2$ Toluene-azonaphthol-disulphonic acids.	Scarlet GT.
$C_6H_3(CH_3)_2(NH_2)$ Xylidine.	Salt G.	$C_6H_3(CH_3)_2-N=N-C_{10}H_4(OH)(SO_3H)_2$ Xylene-azonaphthol-disulphonic acid.	Scarlet G.
Do.	Salt R or mixture of both acids.	Do.	Scarlet R.

$C_6H_2\begin{cases}C_2H_5\\(CH_3)_2\\NH_2\end{cases}$ Ethylxylidine.	Do.	$C_6H_2\begin{cases}C_2H_5\\(CH_3)_2\\-N=N-C_{10}H_4\begin{cases}OH\\(SO_3H)_2\end{cases}\end{cases}$ Ethylxylene-azonaphthol-disulphonic acid.	Scarlet RR.
$C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}NH_2\\SO_3H\end{cases}$ Naphthionic acid.	$C_{10}H_7OH$ Beta-naphthol.	$C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}SO_3H\\-N=N-C_{10}H_6OH\end{cases}$ Beta-naphthol-azonaphthalene-sulphonic acid.	Fast Red, Roccellin.
$C_{10}H_7NH_2$ Alpha-naphthylamine.	Salt R.	$C_{10}H_7-N=N-C_{10}H_4\begin{cases}OH\\(SO_3H)_2\end{cases}$ Naphthalene-azonaphthol-disulphonic acid.	$\begin{cases}\text{Claret-red R.}\\\text{Bordeaux R}\end{cases}$
Do.	Salt G.	Do.	$\begin{cases}\text{Claret-red G.}\\\text{Bordeaux G.}\end{cases}$
$C_6H_4\begin{cases}OCH_3\\NH_2\end{cases}$ Anisidine.	$C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}OH\\SO_3H\end{cases}$ Beta-naphthol-sulphonic acid.	$C_6H_4\begin{cases}OCH_3\\-N=N-C_{10}H_5\begin{cases}OH\\SO_3H\end{cases}\end{cases}$ Anisol-azonaphthol-sulphonic acid.	Anisol-red.
$C_6H_4\begin{cases}OC_2H_5\\NH_3\end{cases}$ Amido phenetol.	Beta-naphthol-sulphonic acids.	Phenetol-azonaphthol-sulphonic acids.	$\begin{cases}\text{Phenetol-red.}\\\text{Coccinin.}\end{cases}$
$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N-C_6H_4.NH_2$ Acid-yellow.*	$C_{10}H_7OH$ Beta-naphthol.	$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N-C_6H_4\cdot N=N\cdot C_{10}H_6OH$ Beta-naphthol-azobenzene-azobenzene-sulphonic acid.	Biebrich-scarlet. Scarlet 4R.
Do.	$C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}OH\\SO_3H\end{cases}$ Beta-naphthol-alpha-sulphonic acid.	$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N-C_6H_4N=N\cdot C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}SO_3H\\OH\end{cases}$ Naphthol-sulphonic acid azobenzene-azobenzene-sulphonic acid.	Crocëin-scarlet.
$C_6H_4N=N\cdot C_6H_4-NH_2$ Aniline-yellow.	$C_{10}H_5\begin{cases}OH\\(SO_3H)_2\end{cases}$ Beta-naphthol-disulphonic acid.	$C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_4-N=N-C_{10}H_4\begin{cases}OH\\(SO_3H)_2\end{cases}$ Azobenzene-azobenzene-naphthol-disulphonic acids.	Scarlet S.†

* In place of acid-yellow, the mixture of the two sulphonic acids obtained by the action of sulphuric acid on amidoazobenzene, can be used.
† According to Nietzki, mixtures of xylidine-scarlet and acid-magenta are sold under the name of Scarlet S and Scarlet SS.

rule has been adopted for all tetrazo dyes which are derived from beta-naphthol-azobenzene-azobenzene—

$$C_6H_5-N=N-C_6H_4-N=N-C_{10}H_6OH:—$$

"Colouring matters which contain the sulpho group in the benzene ring only, dissolve in concentrated sulphuric acid with a green colour (Biebrich-scarlet).

"If the sulpho group is only contained in the naphthol the solution in sulphuric acid will be red or violet (Scarlet S).

"When, however, sulpho groups are contained both in the benzene ring and in the naphthol, they are coloured blue with sulphuric acid."

The aqueous solutions of the oxyazo dyes are either not changed at all when acidulated with hydrochloric acid like the scarlets, or a precipitate is formed. The latter is especially the case when the colouring matter only contains one sulpho group. The formation of a precipitate is due to the fact that the free acid is insoluble in water, as in the case of alkali-blue. The free acid of those colouring matters, however, which contain two or more sulpho groups are also soluble in the free state, and are therefore not precipitated by acids. Tropaeolin 30 gives a purple precipitate, which dissolves in excess of hydrochloric acid. Some of the Biebrich-scarlets show the same reaction.

Ammonia and caustic alkalies do not, as a rule, cause any precipitates in dilute solutions; but they often change the colour, owing to a saturation of the free hydroxyl groups.

A dilute aqueous and only very light yellow solution of tropaeolin 30 No. 2 shows this change of colour very readily; the slightest trace of alkali suffices to turn the colour of the liquid to a fine crimson. For this reason the product is useful as an indicator in volumetric analysis.

Scarlets G and R, crocëin-scarlet and Biebrich-scarlet show a similar reaction, but are not nearly so sensitive as

tropaeolin 3O No. 2. Ammonia is almost without action on the solutions of scarlet 2R and scarlet 3R.

Concentrated solutions of the oxyazo dyes are precipitated by metallic salts; most of the precipitates obtained in this manner (as, for instance, those with alumina and lead) are soluble in excess of water; consequently these colouring matters are not adapted for the preparation of lakes.

By energetic reducing agents, the oxyazo dyes are split up like the amidoazo dyes, two or more amido compounds being formed. Thus, if Biebrich-scarlet is treated with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid, it yields sulphanilic acid, phenylene diamine, and beta-amidonaphthol, according to the equation :—

$$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N-C_6H_4-N=N-C_{10}H_6OH + 4H_2 =$$

Beta-naphthol-azobenzene-azobenzene-sulphonic acid.

$$C_6H_4(SO_3H)NH_2 + C_6H_4(NH_2)_2 + C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}OH\\NH_2.\end{cases}$$

Sulphanilic acid. Phenylene diamine. Amidonaphthol.

This reaction is of great value in the scientific examination of an azo dye for ascertaining the chemical composition; but the separation, purification and examination of the decomposition-products takes up so much time, and is so difficult, that the work can only be carried out by a competent chemist. The complete decolourisation by means of stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid can, however, be used for distinguishing the azo dyes from other yellow and red dyes, especially the natural ones.

Alkaline reducing agents decompose most of the oxyazo dyes in the cold. In some cases, however, especially with some of the tetrazo dyes, their action is not as energetic as that of stannous chloride.

The tetrazo dyes derived from the azobenzene-sulphonic acids (acid-yellow), such as Biebrich-scarlet and crocëin-scarlet, can easily be recognised by their behaviour towards zinc powder, which rapidly decolourises the alkaline

solution. If some of the decolourised liquid is poured on to a watch-glass (in order to present a large surface to the action of the air), it becomes intensely yellow, especially if diluted with a little water. If the liquid is filtered and is then acidulated with hydrochloric acid, a yellow crystalline precipitate is formed, which dissolves in excess of hydrochloric acid with a red colour, thus showing the reactions of acid-yellow.

The reduction with zinc powder in alkaline solution, therefore, only effects a partial decomposition. Taking Biebrich-scarlet as an example, the following equation would be fulfilled :—

$$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-N=N\cdot C_6H_4\cdot N=N\cdot C_{10}H_6OH + 3H_2 =$$

Biebrich-scarlet.

$$C_6H_4(SO_3H)-NH-NH\cdot C_6H_4NH_2 + C_{10}H_6\begin{cases}NH_2\\OH.\end{cases}$$

Amidohydrazobenzene-sulphonic acid. Amidonaphthol.

The colourless hydrazo compound is oxidised in the air to the corresponding azo compound (fast yellow).

Application of the Oxyazo Dyes.

Among the tropaeolins, tropaeolin R and tropaeolin 30 No. 2 are used to a considerable extent for dyeing silk orange. The scarlets have replaced cochineal to a considerable extent in wool-dyeing, while some (crocëin-scarlet, etc.) are used very largely in cotton-dyeing.

As a rule the fastness of the azo dyes increases with the molecular weight. Most of them are pretty fast to light, but they cannot be used for dyeing the Turkish fez, the colour of which must be so fast that several months' exposure to the direct sunlight will not bleach it.

Thus, xylidine-scarlet (scarlet R) when exposed for

eight months to direct sunlight is changed to a light and dull pink; but it stands the action of diffused sunlight very well. The azo dyes do not stand washing with soap as well as cochineal, nor are they as fast to milling as the latter. This is explained by the fact that cochineal-scarlet is an alumina-tin lake, insoluble in water, while the compounds of the azo dyes with alumina and tin dissolve in water.

Silk is dyed in a bath containing boiled-off liquor, or in a soap-bath acidulated with sulphuric acid.

Wool is dyed in an acid-bath. The colouring matters dye more evenly and are more completely extracted from the solution by the addition of certain salts to the dye-bath, which decrease their solubility. Glauber's salts and sulphuric acid, or sodium bisulphate and acetic acid, are generally used for this purpose. Some of the azo dyes are used with alum or stannic chloride and tartar; the shades obtained in this manner are purer and more brilliant than when dyed according to the ordinary method.

Cotton can be prepared with an oil mordant or with stannate of soda and alum. It is then dyed in a concentrated solution of the colouring matter, and dried without being washed. The Biebrich- and crocëin-scarlets can also be dyed on unprepared cotton by padding or otherwise treating the fabric with a concentrated solution of the colouring matter and alum at a moderate temperature. The colours do not stand washing.

For cotton-warp dyeing and in calico-printing, Holliday's and Graessler's patents are of importance, according to which the formation of the colouring matter is effected directly on the fibre. According to Holliday's method cotton may be dyed orange, scarlet, maroon, etc., according to the amido compound and phenol used. The material is first prepared with Turkey-red oil, then passed through an alkaline solution of the phenol (e.g., beta-naphthol), after which it is squeezed and passed through a solution of a diazo compound prepared in the ordinary way (e.g.,

diazoxylene chloride), when the colouring matter is precipitated directly on the fibre. As no sulpho compounds are used in this process, the colouring matters precipitated on the fibre are as a rule very fast, owing to their insolubility in water, dilute acids and alkalies. The scarlets produced in this manner are as brilliant as Turkey-red, but are not quite as fast as the latter, especially to heat, which destroys or volatilises the colour. The goods cannot therefore undergo the operation of "hot pressing."

The following example will serve to illustrate Graessler's patent. In order to produce xylidine-red, $C_6H_3(CH_3)_2 -N=N-C_{10}H_6OH$, on the fibre, a mixture of beta-naphthol, xylidine, sodium nitrite and ammonium chloride, thickened with starch paste, is printed and steamed. The heat causes the xylidine to decompose the ammonium chloride, when ammonia is liberated and xylidine hydrochloride is formed, which latter reacts with the sodium nitrite so as to form sodium chloride and diazoxylene chloride—

$$C_6H_3\begin{cases}(CH_3)_2\\ -N=N\cdot OH.\end{cases}$$

This combines in the nascent state with the naphthol to form xylidine-red. The whole reaction is expressed by the following equations:—

$$C_6H_3\begin{cases}(CH_3)_2\\ NH_2\end{cases} + C_{10}H_7OH + NaNO_2 + NH_4Cl =$$

Xylidine. Beta-naphthol.

$$C_6H_3\begin{cases}(CH_3)_2\\ -N=N\cdot C_{10}H_6OH\end{cases} + NaCl + 2H_2O + NH_3.$$

Scarlet.

According to Dawson's patent, the azo colours may be fixed on the cotton fibre in one operation. For this purpose an aromatic amine (for example, naphthylamine) is diazotised in the usual manner, after which it is completely neutralised by the addition of chalk. To the solution obtained in this manner the equivalent of naphthol is

added in a very finely divided state, along with acetate of soda and a slight quantity of acetic acid. Cotton immersed in such a bath acts catalytically, and induces the gradual formation of the colour upon its surface or within the fibre, thereby becoming gradually and effectively dyed.

Detection on the Fibre.

When dyed on the fibre, all orange, red, claret-red and brown oxyazo dyes are completely and permanently decolourised* when the material is boiled with tin and hydrochloric acid, or with zinc powder. When treated with concentrated sulphuric acid they yield characteristic intense colorations, which have already been described above.

Bisulphite Compounds of the Azo Dyes.

A number of patents have recently been made public, all of which have for their basis the production of soluble compounds from the insoluble azo dyes by treatment with alkaline bisulphites. The preparation of these compounds is either effected like that of coeruleïn S, or alizarin-blue S, by treating the finely divided colouring matter with a concentrated solution of an alkaline bisulphite, or by treating the azo dye with a bisulphite in a solvent common to both (alcohol). The compounds are not affected by dilute acids, but under the influence of heat, they are decomposed into the original dye-stuff and a neutral sulphite. It has been proposed to utilise this latter property in calico-printing, for which purpose the bisulphite compound, suitably thickened, is printed on the fabric and subsequently steamed. During the steaming the decomposition takes place, and the insoluble azo dye is fixed on the fibre. The colours produced in this manner are said to stand washing.

* In one or two cases the liquid, after filtering, is turned yellow in the air.

The only commercial product of this class which has hitherto been brought out is known as Azarin.

Azarin possesses the formula—

$$C_6H_2Cl_2(OH)-N=N-C_{10}H_6OH + NH_4\cdot H\cdot SO_3,$$

by which it is represented as a molecular compound of naphthol-azo-dichlor-phenol and ammonium bisulphite. It forms an orange paste, which resembles ordinary alizarin paste in appearance. The colouring matter is not easily soluble in water, but dissolves readily in alkalies with a deep bluish-violet colour. If the paste is heated, a copious disengagement of sulphur dioxide takes place and the colour turns to a scarlet.

Azarin is chiefly applied to cotton. The material is first prepared with Turkey-red oil and aluminium acetate, after which it is dyed in a neutral bath of azarin. A brilliant red inclining to a crimson can be obtained in this manner, which stands the action of soap tolerably well.

Azo Dyes derived from Benzidine.

If benzidine,

$$\begin{array}{l} C_6H_5-NH_2 \\ | \\ C_6H_5-NH_2, \end{array}$$

is treated with nitrous acid, it yields a tetrazo compound, the hydrochloride of which would be represented by the formula—

$$\begin{array}{l} C_6H_5-N=NCl \\ | \\ C_6H_5-N=NCl. \end{array}$$

When combined in the ordinary way with the aromatic amines or phenoles or their derivatives, the salts of tetrazo-diphenyl yield a series of colouring matters which possess the peculiar but valuable property of dyeing vegetable fibres in a neutral or alkaline bath without the intervention of a mordant.

Congo-red is obtained according to the patent specification by the action of tetrazo-diphenyl chloride on naphthylamine-sulphonate of soda, and possesses the formula—

$$\begin{array}{l} C_6H_4-N=N-C_{10}H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot SO_3Na \\ | \\ C_6H_4-N=N-C_{10}H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot SO_3Na. \end{array}$$

The commercial product is a brown-red powder, which dissolves easily in water with a fine red colour. The aqueous solution is so sensitive to acids that a single drop of very dilute sulphuric suffices to convert the whole of the liquid to a beautiful blue; in strong solutions a precipitate of the free sulphonic acid is formed. This property makes Congo-red valuable as an indicator in volumetric analysis. Solutions of many metallic salts, such as alum, copper sulphate, copperas, etc., when pure do not affect Congo-red in the least, while blue litmus is reddened by them. Congo-red is therefore a valuable agent in the detection of free acids in these salts.

Application.—Cotton is either dyed in a neutral bath or in a weak soap-bath at a boiling temperature. A fine scarlet is produced in this manner; but although fast to soap, it possesses the fatal property of being changed by the slightest trace of acid to a violet or even to a blue. Washing restores the original shade. Wool can be dyed in a neutral bath.

Chrysamin is a yellow dye obtained by the action of tetrazo-diphenyl chloride on salicylate of soda. It possesses the formula—

$$\begin{array}{l} C_6H_4-N=N\cdot C_6H_3(OH)\cdot COONa \\ | \\ C_6H_4-N=N\cdot C_6H_3(OH)COONa. \end{array}$$

Chrysamin forms a yellow powder, which is sparingly soluble in cold water, but dissolves easily on boiling with an orange colour. An addition of caustic soda turns the colour of the solution to an orange-red, from which

sulphuric acid precipitates the colouring matter (the free acid) in orange flakes. Concentrated sulphuric acid dissolves chrysamin with a deep magenta colour.

Application.—Cotton is dyed with the addition of soap and phosphate of soda at a boiling temperature. The shades obtained are fast to light.

Benzo-purpurin is obtained by the action of tetrazo-ditolyl chloride on naphthylamine sulphonate of soda, and possesses the formula—

$$\begin{array}{l} C_7H_6-N=N\cdot C_{10}H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot SO_3Na \\ | \\ C_7H_6-N=N\cdot C_{10}H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot SO_3Na. \end{array}$$

Benzo-purpurin forms a dark red powder, which dissolves easily in water with a red-orange colour, on which caustic soda is without action. Dilute sulphuric acid precipitates the colouring matter from its solutions as a brown-red precipitate resembling ferric hydrate in appearance. Concentrated sulphuric acid dissolves the colouring matter with a pure blue colour.

Application.—Cotton is dyed with the addition of potassium carbonate at a boiling temperature. A very fine scarlet may be obtained in this manner, which differs materially from the red obtained with Congo-red in not being changed by dilute acids and in being faster to light.

Azo-blue is formed by the action of tetrazo-ditolyl chloride on beta-naphthol-sulphonate of potash, and possesses the formula—

$$\begin{array}{l} C_7H_6-N=N\cdot C_{10}H_5OH\cdot SO_3K \\ | \\ C_7H_6-N=N\cdot C_{10}H_5OH\cdot SO_3K. \end{array}$$

Azo-blue forms a dark blue powder, which dissolves easily in water with a rich violet colour. Caustic soda turns the colour of the solution to a fine crimson, which is

restored to the original colour by the addition of dilute sulphuric acid.

Concentrated sulphuric acid dissolves azo-blue with a pure blue colour.

Application.—Cotton is dyed with the addition of soap and phosphate of soda at a boiling temperature. A reddish blue is thus obtained, which is fast to soap and acids, but is not very brilliant.

The colouring matters of this group may be used along with each other for the production of mixed shades on cotton. They are also applicable to wool and silk under the same conditions, and may therefore be found useful in the dyeing of mixed fabrics.

DERIVATIVES OF QUINOLINE.

Of these bodies only two, viz., flavaniline and quinoline yellow are of importance as colouring matters.

Flavaniline.

If acetanilid, $C_6H_5NHC_2H_3O$, is heated for several hours with zinc chloride to 250°—270°, a brown melt is obtained, which yields when purified a yellow powder, soluble in water. The free base has the composition $C_{16}H_{14}N_2$, and melts at 97°. The combination, with one equivalent of hydrochloric acid, forms the colouring matter flavaniline, $C_{16}H_{14}N_2HCl$.

Application.—Flavaniline is a basic colouring matter, and is applied in dyeing like the other basic coal-tar colours. Wool and silk are dyed in neutral baths; cotton is previously prepared with tannin and tartar emetic. The shades obtained are bright yellow with a cast of green. On silk the colouring matter shows a beautiful moss-green fluorescence.

Quinoline-yellow.

Quinoline-yellow is the sodium-salt of quinoline-phthaleïn-sulphonic acid. Hitherto no formula has been ascribed to this compound. It forms a bright yellow powder, which dissolves easily in water with an intense yellow colour, which is unaltered by dilute sulphuric acid, but is turned somewhat darker by ammonia.

Application. — Quinoline-yellow is not applicable to cotton. It is dyed on wool and silk in an acid-bath (H_2SO_4), and yields very pure shades of yellow, which somewhat resemble those obtained with picric acid. It stands light fairly well, only becoming a trifle lighter after a month's exposure; in which it differs materially from picric acid, which becomes orange.

IV. Artificial Indigo.

On the 1st of May, 1880, a patent was taken out by Professor Baeyer, of Munich, for the "Preparation of Derivatives and Homologues of Ortho-nitro-cinnamic Acid, and their conversion into Indigo-blue and allied dye-stuffs." Thus indigo-blue, or indigotine, belongs to the coal-tar colours. In spite of the endeavours of the "Badische Anilin und Soda Fabrik," this synthesis has not yet become a practical success, since the artificial indigo is much more expensive than the natural product. If the cost of artificial indigo could be reduced below that of natural indigo, its introduction into commerce would cause as great a revolution in dyeing, as that of alizarin in place of madder.

Of more practical importance than artificial indigo is the "propiolic acid," which, in itself colourless, may be converted into indigo-blue on the fibre.

Propiolic Acid.

(Ortho-nitrophenyl-propiolic Acid.)

Preparation.—The starting-point for the manufacture is ortho-nitro-cinnamic acid—

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-NO_2\\-CH{=}CH\cdot COOH,\end{matrix}$$

which is obtained from cinnamic acid.

Cinnamic acid, $C_6H_5-CH{=}CH-COOH$, may be obtained by heating benzaldehyde with acetic anhydride:—

$$2\,C_6H_5COH + \begin{matrix} CH_3\cdot CO \\ CH_3\cdot CO \end{matrix}\!\!>\!O =$$

Benzaldehyde. Acetic anhydride.

$$2\,C_6H_5\text{–}CH{=}CH\text{–}COOH + H_2O.$$

Cinnamic acid.

On a large scale, benzal chloride is heated to 180°—200° with anhydrous sodium acetate:—

$$C_6H_5CHCl_2 + 2\,CH_3\cdot CO\cdot ONa =$$

Benzal chloride. Sodium acetate.

$$C_6H_5\text{–}CH{=}CH\text{–}COOH + 2\,NaCl + CH_3\cdot COOH.$$

Cinnamic acid.

The cinnamic acid is treated with fuming nitric acid, which converts it into two isomeric mononitro acids. The ortho acid (which alone is used) is separated from the para acid by a method based upon the different solubility of the two products.

Another method is to heat ortho-nitro benzaldehyde with acetic anhydride:—

$$C_6H_4\begin{cases} NO_2 \\ COH \end{cases} + CH_3COOH =$$

Ortho-nitro benzaldehyde. Acetic acid.

$$C_6H_4\begin{cases} NO_2 \\ \text{–}CH{=}CH\cdot COOH \end{cases} + H_2O.$$

Ortho-nitro-cinnamic acid.

Ortho-nitro-cinnamic acid unites with bromine to form a dibromide:—

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix} -NO_2 \\ -CH{=}CH\text{–}COOH \end{matrix} + Br_2 =$$

Ortho-nitro-cinnamic acid.

$$C_6H_4\begin{cases} NO_2 \\ \text{–}CHBr\text{–}CHBrCOOH. \end{cases}$$

Ortho-nitro-cinnamic acid dibromide.

This dibromide is boiled with alcoholic potash:—

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-NO_2\\-CHBr-CHBr-COOH\end{matrix} + 3KHO =$$

Ortho-nitro-cinnamic dibromide.

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-NO_2\\-C\equiv C\cdot COOK\end{matrix} + 2KBr + H_2O.$$

Ortho-nitrophenyl-propiolate of potash.

The free acid is separated by means of hydrochloric acid.

From ortho-nitrophenyl-propiolic acid and its ethers, certain intermediate products may be obtained. These are indogenic acid and its ethers, and indogene, both of which are converted by dilute acids and alkalies, in presence of air, into indigo-blue (not indoïn), thus being suitable for calico-printing.

Properties.—The pure acid forms colourless needles or leaflets, which become brown on heating, and swell up and decompose at 155° to 160°. It is soluble in boiling water, but is decomposed by long boiling. Its alkali salts are easily soluble in water, but are precipitated by excess of alkali.

The acid comes into commerce as "propiolic acid," in a paste containing 25 per cent. of solid substance.

By boiling with reducing agents, such as potash and grape sugar, indigo-blue is formed:—

$$2C_9H_5(NO_2)O_2 + 2H_2 = C_{16}H_{10}N_2O_2 + 2CO_2 + 2H_2O.$$

Propiolic acid. Indigo-blue.

If propiolic acid, in sulphuric-acid solution, is treated with reducing agents, like ferrous sulphate, metallic iron, zinc, tin, lead, copper, etc., or is reduced with sulphurous acid, potassium sulphocyanide, etc., indigo-blue is not produced, but a very similar colouring matter, known as indoïn, is formed. If, for instance, propiolic acid is mixed with sulphuric acid and ferrous sulphate, the solution turns blue and indoïn separates as a flocculent precipitate. Indoïn may be distinguished from indigo by the following reactions:—

It dissolves in cold sulphuric acid, but does not easily yield a sulphonic acid on heating. With sulphurous acid or bisulphites, a blue solution is produced, from which a colouring matter soluble in water may be salted out. On warming, this double compound is decomposed, yielding sulphurous acid and the original colouring matter.

Application.—Propiolic acid is used exclusively for calico-printing.

The printer's colour consists of a solvent, a reducing agent, and a thickening. The most suitable combination is borax, xanthate of soda or zinc, and starch.

The colour does not stand steaming well; it is developed like aniline-black. During this operation the unpleasant smell of mercaptan, C_2H_5SH, is produced, which adheres very tenaciously to the material, but can be removed by treatment with weak alkalies and soap-baths.

The blue obtained in this manner is not pure, but slightly grey.

The production of propiolic-acid blue is thus very simple. On the other hand, the production of blue with natural indigo is very complicated, as the following example will show :—

A tin-indigo compound is first prepared by reducing indigo with stannous chloride and soda, and precipitating with hydrochloric acid. This indigo-white compound is thickened, and printed, and the pieces passed through milk of lime, which dissolves the indigo-white and allows it to penetrate the fibre. They are then immersed in running water, which effects the oxidation and the fixation of the blue. Then follows an acid bath to remove the lime, and finally a soap bath. The colour is never very intense, and the operation must be carried out with great care and rapidity, in order to prevent the indigo-white becoming oxidised before it has had time to be absorbed by the fibre.

Propiolic-acid blue, however, possesses the disadvantage that it cannot be used along with other colouring matters

which require steaming, since it is turned grey by this operation.

It may be printed along with aniline-black, and also with iron and alumina mordants, which are afterwards dyed in alizarin.

Detection on the fibre.—It is unaltered by hydrochloric acid and caustic soda. Stannous chloride first turns it green, and then decolourises it. Concentrated nitric acid turns it yellow. Boiling alcohol is not coloured, but chloroform becomes blue.

On heating a small piece of the material, purple vapours are given off.

V. The Anthracene Colouring Matters.

Although the number of colouring matters obtained from anthracene is very limited, they all resemble each other so closely in their chemical properties, and at the same time differ so widely from the other coal-tar colours, that they form a natural group of the latter.

In the free state they are almost insoluble in water, but are easily soluble in ammonia and caustic alkalies. With the alkaline earths and most metallic oxides they yield richly coloured, insoluble lakes. This behaviour towards bases indicates the acid nature of these colouring matters, and a more thorough examination will show that they contain free hydroxyl groups, and therefore belong to the phenoles.

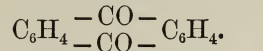
The anthracene colouring matters can only be dyed with the help of mordants; they are invariably adjective. The shades produced with them are much faster to soap, chloride of lime, dilute acids, and in most cases also to light, than those obtained with the other coal-tar colours, while at the same time they are faster than most of the natural colouring matters.

Manufacture of Commercial Alizarin.

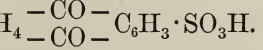
The method usually adopted for the transformation of anthracene into alizarin is effected in three distinct operations. Anthracene is first oxidised to anthraquinon, which is then treated with sulphuric acid and thereby transformed into sulphonic acids. These are melted in the third operation with caustic soda, when alizarin is

formed. The following anthracene derivatives are formed during the process :—

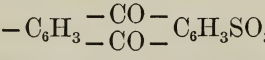
Anthracene.



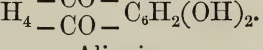
Anthraquinon.



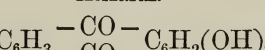
Anthraquinon-monosulphonic acid.



Alpha- and beta-anthraquinon-disulphonic acids.



Alizarin.

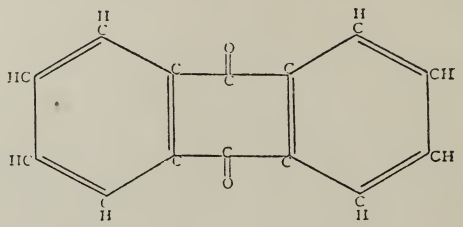


Flavopurpurin, and Anthrapurpurin.

Anthraquinon.—For the preparation of this first intermediate product, sublimated, finely-divided anthracene is suspended in water and oxidised at the boil with $1\frac{1}{2}$ parts of bichromate of potash and a corresponding quantity of sulphuric acid. After cooling, the anthraquinon is collected on a filter, washed and dried. Anthraquinon prepared in this manner is by no means pure, but contains a large percentage of bye-products, most of which result from the impurities contained in crude anthracene. In order to purify it, it is dissolved in concentrated sulphuric acid, heated to 110°—120°, and the black mass obtained in this manner treated with steam, which is readily absorbed by the sulphuric acid. This gradual dilution with water causes the anthraquinon to separate in a crystalline form. It is now extracted with boiling water, filtered, washed, and lastly, treated with a hot solution of soda, which does

not affect the anthraquinon, but removes certain sparingly soluble organic acids contained in it.

Anthraquinon, $C_{14}H_8O_2$, or—



can be obtained in the chemically pure state by sublimation. It forms golden-yellow needles or long prisms, which melt at 273°. It is insoluble in water, and combines neither with bases nor with acids.

In order to prepare alizarin, anthrapurpurin, or flavopurpurin from this product, it is necessary to introduce two or more hydroxyl groups; and this is effected by means of a well-known reaction based upon the behaviour of the sulpho groups towards molten caustic alkali, which is also used, for instance, in the manufacture of resorcin. In melting the anthraquinon-sulphonic acids with alkali, however, the sulpho groups are not simply replaced by hydroxyl, but an oxidation invariably takes place simultaneously.

Thus when anthraquinon-monosulphonic acid is melted with caustic soda in the manufacture of alizarin, the reaction does not take place according to the equation—

$$C_{14}H_7O_2 \cdot SO_3Na + 2NaHO = \underset{\text{Oxyanthraquinon.}}{C_{14}H_7O_2ONa} + Na_2SO_3 + H_2O,$$

but according to the following equation:—

$$C_{14}H_7O_2 \cdot SO_3Na + 3NaHO = \underset{\text{Alizarin.}}{C_{14}H_6O_2(ONa)_2} + Na_2SO_3 + H_2 + H_2O.$$

The hydrogen formed according to this equation does not make its appearance in the gaseous condition, but acts as a reducing agent on the anthraquinon-monosulphonic acid and on the alizarin formed. This would diminish the yield considerably; but it is checked by adding to the melt some oxidising substance, such as chlorate of potash.

Anthraquinon-sulphonic acids. — When anthraquinon is treated with sulphuric acid, three sulphonic acids are formed; viz., one mono- and two disulphonic acids, which latter are known as alpha- and beta-disulphonic acids respectively.

Anthraquinon-monosulphonic acid is formed along with small quantities of the disulphonic acids when anthraquinon is heated to 160° with fuming sulphuric acid (containing 50 per cent. of anhydride). If the quantity of sulphuric acid is increased without raising the temperature the chief product of the reaction is the *beta-disulphonic acid.* But if the temperature is kept for some time at 180° to 185°, the chief product will be the *alpha-disulphonic acid.*

The separation of the three sulphonic acids can be effected by the behaviour of their sparingly soluble sodium-salts to dilute sulphuric acid, which does not affect that of the monosulphonic acid, but changes those of the disulphonic acid into easily soluble acid-salts.

Melting with caustic soda.—In this operation, anthraquinon-monosulphonic acid yields alizarin; the alpha-disulphonic acid, flavopurpurin; and the beta acid, anthrapurpurin.

The operation is carried out under a high pressure in strong boilers provided with stirring gear. From 3 to 4 parts of solid caustic soda are first heated with a small quantity of water until the whole becomes liquid, after which the chlorate of potash is added along with 1 part of anthraquinon-monosulphonate of soda. The boiler is then closed and heated for twenty-four hours to 180°—

—200°. The melt is then allowed to cool, and is dissolved in a large quantity of water and neutralised with hydrochloric acid. According to a more recent patent this neutralisation is effected with sulphurous acid, in order to effect a regeneration of the caustic soda. The alizarin is precipitated in a very finely divided flocculent state. The whole is now pumped through filter-presses, well washed, and the cakes of alizarin obtained in this manner grnoud with water to a homogeneous paste containing a known percentage. The latter contains alizarin, flavopurpurin, and anthrapurpurin in varying proportions.

Alizarin, $C_{14}H\,O_2(OH)_2$.—For the preparation of pure alizarin, *pure* anthraquinon-monosulphonic acid is melted with caustic soda. It can also be obtained from the blue shade of commercial alizarin in the following manner :—

The paste is dissolved in dilute caustic soda, and the solution is filtered from the anthraquinon and other insoluble impurities. A solution of barium chloride is then added and the whole is heated to the boil, when alizarate of barium separates out in a crystalline state. The precipitate is collected on a filter, washed, and decomposed with an acid. The washing is then continued, in order to remove the barium and free acid. The product obtained in this manner is almost chemically pure, but it can be purified still further by sublimation or crystallisation from glacial acetic acid.

Alizarin has also been obtained synthetically by heating phthalic anhydride with pyrocatechin :—

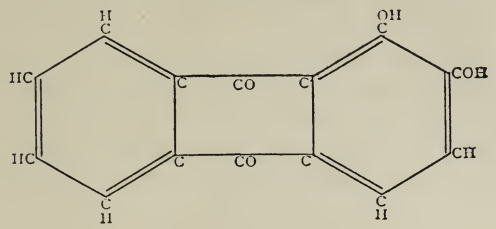
$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-CO-\\-CO-\end{matrix}O + C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-OH\\-OH\end{matrix} =$$

Phthalic anhydride. Pyrocatechin.

$$C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-CO-\\-CO-\end{matrix}C_6H_2\begin{matrix}-OH\\-OH\end{matrix} + H_2O.$$

Alizarin.

The position of the hydroxyl groups is expressed by the following constitutional formula :—



Sublimated alizarin forms splendid orange-red crystals, which melt at about 280°. It is almost insoluble in cold water and but sparingly soluble in boiling water, one litre of which takes up 0·31 grm. of alizarin. In cold alcohol it does not dissolve easily, but boiling alcohol and glycerin dissolve it. Sulphuric acid dissolves alizarin with a reddish-brown colour, but on diluting with water the alizarin is reprecipitated in the unchanged state. In solutions of alum or aluminium sulphate alizarin is almost insoluble.

Alizarin crystallised from moist ether contains three molecules of water of crystallisation. When precipitated by acids from alkaline solutions it also contains water, which is given off at 100°.

The behaviour of alizarin towards alkalies is that of a weak acid. It dissolves in caustic alkalies and in ammonia with a blue-violet colour, but is precipitated from these solutions by acetic acid. If, however, alizarin is boiled with sodium acetate, it dissolves and is separated out unchanged on cooling. But if the boiling is continued for some time, acetic acid is given off and the alizarin remains permanently dissolved.

The compounds of alizarin with calcium and barium are thrown down as violet precipitates when salts of lime or baryta are added to an alkaline solution of the colouring matter. The peculiar behaviour of the calcium compound

towards free carbonic or acetic acids is described on p. 226. (Rosenstiehl's method of dyeing).

With all other bases, alizarin yields sparingly soluble or insoluble permanent lakes. The alumina and tin lakes are red, the others mostly dark-coloured. The behaviour of alizarin towards these bases is that of a strong acid; so strong, indeed, that it is capable of decomposing chlorides and nitrates in dilute solutions, thus replacing hydrochloric and nitric acids.

Anthrapurpurin.

Pure anthrapurpurin (also called isopurpurin) is best obtained by melting pure beta-anthraquinon-disulphonic acid with caustic soda and chlorate of potash. Nothing more is known of the position of the hydroxyl groups than that they are contained in both benzene rings:—

$$OH \cdot C_6H_3 \begin{matrix} -CO- \\ -CO- \end{matrix} C_6H_2(OH)_2.$$

Anthrapurpurin sublimates with partial decomposition and melts at 360°. It is somewhat soluble in boiling water; easily soluble in boiling alcohol and glacial acetic acid.

Its solutions in caustic alkalies are redder than those of alizarin. It is somewhat soluble in a solution of barium hydrate. Sulphuric acid dissolves it with a dull violet colour, but the addition of a trace of sodium nitrite to the solution turns it a splendid red-violet. A boiling solution of alum dissolves a trace of anthrapurpurin with an orange colour, which on cooling separates out again. (Distinction from purpurin.)

Flavopurpurin.

With respect to formula and preparation, the same applies as for anthrapurpurin, except that in the preparation instead of the alpha acid, beta-anthraquinon-

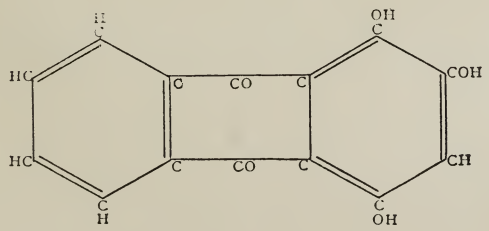
disulphonic acid is used. Flavopurpurin forms yellow needles, which melt above 330° and can be sublimated. It is almost insoluble in water, but dissolves easily in cold alcohol.

Its solutions in alkalies are redder still than those of anthrapurpurin; the solution in ammonia is yellowish-red, while that of anthrapurpurin is violet. A boiling solution of alum does not dissolve it.

Purpurin.

Purpurin, $C_{14}H_5O_2(OH)_3$, is isomeric with anthrapurpurin and flavopurpurin, and was the first trioxyanthraquinon known. Although it is not a constituent of artificial alizarin, it will be described here, since after alizarin, it is the most important constituent of madder, and the results obtained in dyeing with artificial alizarin and with madder are often compared with each other.

Purpurin differs from its two isomers in having all the three hydroxyl groups in one benzene ring. Their relative position is shown in the formula :—



Lalande has devised a method for the preparation of purpurin from alizarin. Alizarin is dissolved in concentrated sulphuric acid, and is oxidised by the introduction of dry arsenic acid and heating to 150°—160°. When the reaction is over, the colouring matter is precipitated by dilution with water and washed with a concentrated

solution of alum, which dissolves the purpurin, while unchanged alizarin remains behind. The liquid is filtered, and the purpurin precipitated by the addition of hydrochloric acid. Pure purpurin is obtained by crystallising the precipitate obtained in this manner from alcohol.

It forms red needles, which begin to sublimate at 150°, and melt at 253°. In boiling water it dissolves with a dark red colour. When crystallised from aqueous alcohol it is obtained in the form of orange needles, of the formula $C_4H_5O_2(OH)_3+H_2O$.

Purpurin dissolves in caustic alkalies with a purple colour; but if the solution is exposed to the light for some time, the colouring matter is destroyed and the liquid is decolourised.

The most characteristic property of purpurin is, that it dissolves in a boiling solution of alum with a yellowish-red colour and green fluorescence. The purpurin alumina-lake also shows this property.

If a solution of alizarin in alkalies or alum is treated with an excess of acid, *purpurin hydrate* is thrown down, which dissolves in tepid alcohol much more easily than purpurin. When heated it parts with its water of hydration and passes over into ordinary purpurin. The artificial purpurin paste is supposed to consist chiefly of this hydrate.

Commercial Alizarin.

Alizarin is always sold in commerce in the form of a paste, which contains the hydrates of the colouring matters in an exceedingly fine state of division. The amount of dry colouring matter usually varies from 10 to 25 per cent., but pastes are also sold which contain as much as 60 per cent. of dry substance. These concentrated pastes are not so advantageous as the thinner ones, as they do not divide as evenly in the dye-baths and in printer's colours. According to an agreement lately made

among the German alizarin manufacturers, no other than 20 per-cent. alizarin is brought into the market.

If alizarin paste is dried and afterwards ground to a paste again with water, it is found to have lost its slight solubility altogether, and has become totally unfit for dyeing. The reason of this change is, that it is not possible to obtain the original fine state of division by grinding; and besides that, the colouring matters give up their water by hydration on drying.

The two most important commercial varieties are alizarin blue shade, or alizarin V, and alizarin yellow shade, or alizarin G.

The blue shade of alizarin is obtained by melting crude anthraquinon-monosulphonic acid with caustic soda, and consists chiefly of alizarin. In dyeing, it yields with an alumina mordant a bluish but not very brilliant shade of red; with a small percentage of mordant, however, beautiful shades of pink can be obtained. It is used besides along with an iron mordant for dyeing and printing fast violets.

Alizarin yellow shade contains a large percentage of anthrapurpurin and flavopurpurin, and little alizarin. Anthrapurpurin yields with alumina mordants an almost neutral red; flavopurpurin, however, yields a fiery red which contains a considerable proportion of yellow. The larger the proportion of flavopurpurin, the yellower the shades. The violets obtained with flavopurpurin and anthrapurpurin and iron mordants are of no use.

The chief impurities which alizarin blue shade contains are anthraquinon and oxyanthraquinon.

Oxyanthraquinon, $C_6H_4\begin{matrix}-CO-\\-CO-\end{matrix}C_6H_3OH$, is the monohydroxyl derivative corresponding to anthraquinon-monosulphonic acid; and it would be the only product of the alizarin melt, were it not that a simultaneous oxidation takes place and alizarin is formed.

In a similar manner alizarin yellow shade contains two

dioxyanthraquinones, $C_{14}H_6O_2(OH)_2$, which are isomeric with alizarin.

Anthraflavic acid is produced from the alpha-disulphonic acid of anthraquinon; flavopurpurin can be regarded as an oxyanthraflavic acid. Similar relations exist between beta-anthraquinon-disulphonic acid, isoanthraflavic acid, and anthrapurpurin.

The oxyanthraquinones which occur as impurities in alizarin may be detected by boiling with lime and filtering. If the filtrate is coloured brown the sample contains oxyanthraquinon, anthraflavic acid or isoanthraflavic acid, all of which can be precipitated by the addition of an acid. None of these impurities are of any value in dyeing, and therefore only diminish the value of the alizarin.

The different colouring matters contained in commercial alizarin can be recognised in the following manner:—

A small sample of the alizarin in question is dissolved in sodium carbonate and the solution filtered from the undissolved anthraquinon and oxyanthraquinon, which latter can be separated from each other by means of caustic alkali or quicklime. The filtrate is then acidified with hydrochloric acid, and the precipitate boiled with milk of lime in order to remove anthraflavic and isoflavic acids. The undissolved lime-lakes are stirred to a paste with water, decomposed with hydrochloric acid, and the residue collected on a filter, washed and dried.

The residue obtained in this manner is a mixture of alizarin, flavopurpurin and anthrapurpurin; but the quantitative separation of these three products is very difficult to carry out. According to the following method of Schunk and Römer they can easily be detected when present simultaneously:—

A small sample is dried at 100° and then placed between two glass plates separated from each other by a leaden ring some millimetres in thickness. The whole is heated in an air-bath to 140°—150°, at which temperature the

alizarin sublimates and is carried away: if the temperature is now raised to 170°, a mixed sublimate of flavopurpurin and anthrapurpurin is obtained. These two colouring matters are most readily detected under the microscope; flavopurpurin forms reddish-yellow needles, while anthrapurpurin forms thick crystals. The quantitative separation of the two might be effected by boiling with benzene, in which flavopurpurin dissolves, anthrapurpurin not.

The *valuation* of the alizarins is usually effected by estimating the percentage of dry substance and the ash, and by carrying out comparative dye-trials.

In estimating the percentage of dry substance it should be borne in mind that the temperature should not be allowed to rise much above 100°, since alizarin begins to sublimate at 110°. The residue should appear yellow, and not dark brown. Alizarin pastes sometimes contain glycerin, Turkey-red oil, etc., which have been added in order to thicken the paste. These can be separated from the colouring matters by diluting with water and filtering. The filtrate may contain besides, small quantities of salts which have not been properly removed in the manufacture. It should neither have a brown nor a reddish tinge, but should be perfectly colourless.

The ash should not weigh more than 1 per cent. of the dry alizarin, and should be free from iron.

Application of Alizarin.

The alizarin colouring matters are adjective in their behaviour towards all textile fibres. The shades produced with the help of different mordants are characterised by their fullness, brilliancy and fastness. They are used principally for dyeing and printing cotton, and to some extent in wool-dyeing. On silk they yield fine shades of red, brown and black; but they are not used much in silk-dyeing, on account of the great advantages which the

substantive coal-tar colours possess over alizarin. Their fixation with the help of mordants not only necessitates a much longer and more difficult process of dyeing, but has besides the disadvantage of causing the silk to lose some of its gloss and pliability, on account of the alumina deposited on the fibre.

Cotton.—The mordants used in cotton-dyeing and calico-printing are salts of alumina, iron, chromium and tin, besides lime, tannic acid, and oil mordants.

Alizarin-red and pink.—Alizarin-red is the alumina lime-lake of the yellow shade, alizarin-pink the alumina lime-lake of the blue shade of alizarin. These lakes can be obtained as such by dissolving the colouring matter in an alkali and adding a solution of alum, in the form of red flocculent precipitates. The combination of pure alizarin with alumina is the most stable; and the affinity which these two bodies have for each other is so great, that if alizarin is boiled with a dilute solution of aluminium sulphate, the latter is decomposed, aluminium alizarate being formed. An additional proof of the affinity of these two substances is rendered by the fact that alizarin is precipitated from its alkaline solutions when agitated with aluminium hydrate.

When dyed on cotton, alizarin is not present in the form of a pure alumina lake, but in a much more complicated combination, which contains besides alumina two other inorganic bases, viz., lime and stannic oxide. The compound contains besides, tannic acid, fatty acids, and in some cases phosphoric and arsenic acids, which, along with the alizarin, form the acid constituents. Alizarin thus offers a very striking example of the rule that the stability of a colour is proportionate to the number of the different constituents of the lake.

Alizarin can be fixed on the fibre in two ways, viz., either by *dyeing* or by *steaming*. In dyeing, the material is first prepared with the mordant (alumina, iron, etc.), and then dyed in a hot bath of alizarin; while in steaming, the

alizarin and mordant are printed simultaneously on the fabric and the colour developed by means of steam.

In Turkey-red dyeing the only mordant base which is applied is a salt of alumina, the lime and stannic oxide contained in the finished lake being introduced during the different operations of dyeing and clearing.

Yarn is mordanted with solutions of alum or aluminium sulphate neutralised with soda or chalk. The same mordant can be used for dyeing calico or other cotton fabrics. For the production of coloured designs on a white ground, it is necessary to print the mordant on those places which must subsequently appear coloured. In printing, a special mordant for red is commonly used, which is obtained by adding to a solution of alum a quantity of acetate of lead insufficient to effect a total double decomposition, along with some soda. The solution obtained in this manner contains basic acetate and basic sulphate of alumina. Acetate of alumina alone would not give good results, as it renders the material impervious, and difficult to wet out. The mordant is thickened with starch for printing.

The following operations effect the precipitation of the alumina imbibed by the fibre in a more or less granular but not gelatinous condition. The material is first hung up in a large chamber heated to 32°—40° C., in which the degree of moisture is carefully regulated. It remains here until a considerable proportion of the acetic acid has been given off, which renders the alumina-salts more basic and almost insoluble.

In the next operation, the "dunging," the material is passed through a hot bath containing cow's (or pig's) dung and chalk. The chalk removes acetic and sulphuric acids from the printed material, while the action of the cow's dung is chiefly a mechanical one; it prevents any detached mordant from settling on the white parts of the fabric.

The pieces are now thoroughly washed and passed into

the dye-bath, where they are dyed with alizarin, beginning at a low temperature and raising gradually to the boil.

The analysis of materials dyed with madder, therefore, with a mixture of natural alizarin and purpurin, shows that the red contains alumina and lime in the proportion of two molecules of Al_2O_3 to three of CaO. The material contains, previous to dyeing, a small quantity of lime, which has become assimilated during the bleaching process from the chloride of lime used. But the greater part of the lime is taken from the calcareous water used in preparing the dye-bath.

According to Rosenstiehl, it is necessary for this reason that the water should contain a certain amount of lime. Although the alizarin lime-lake is insoluble in pure water, it dissolves easily in carbonic acid; and as the natural waters usually contain bicarbonate of lime as well as free carbonic acid, a considerable proportion of the alizarin is dissolved as lime-lake, which is taken up as such by the alumina on the fibre. But as the dyeing is always carried out at a high temperature, carbonic acid is gradually evolved, and the lime-lake which is thus caused to fall assimilates at the bottom of the vessel and causes a loss of alizarin. In order to counteract this evil, Rosenstiehl recommends an addition of calcium acetate to the dye-bath, or in case the water contains much lime, simply an addition of acetic acid. At first the bath is kept slightly acid. The alizarin dissolves in the calcium acetate, which it gradually decomposes as the temperature rises. Acetic acid is thus set free, while the alizarin lime-lake formed is taken up along with free alizarin by the alumina.

After dyeing, the red has a dull appearance, and must pass through the operation of *clearing* in order to obtain its full brilliancy.

This is effected by boiling with soap and stannous chloride. The action of the latter is rather complicated. In the first place it removes part of the soda from the

soap and yields sodium chloride and stannous hydrate. The soap is thus rendered more neutral and more fitted to give up fatty acid to the colour-lake, which is proved by the considerable quantity of fatty acid taken up during this operation. The stannous hydrate reduces and thereby decolourises the brown impurities fixed on the fibre along with the alizarin. It is thereby gradually oxidised to stannic hydrate, which combines with part of the alizarin to form an orange lake, and thus brightens the colour.

According to another method, stannic oxide is introduced into the colour-lake by passing the pieces through a moderately warm bath containing nitromuriate of tin. The latter is a stannic salt, and is obtained by adding stannous chloride to an equal weight of nitric acid.

The fastness of alizarin-red is due to a great extent to the presence of *fatty acids* or of *oxidised fatty acids.* The amount of fatty acid introduced during the operation of soaping is insufficient, and special operations are therefore necessary in order to charge the fibre with this substance. Turkey-red, which is the fastest and most permanent colour obtained with alizarin, contains the maximum amount of fatty acids.

The oil which yielded the fatty acids in the old method of Turkey-red dyeing was known as *huile tournante* or *rancid Gallipoli.* It is a species of olive-oil which contains free olëic acid, and possesses the property of forming an emulsion with alkaline carbonates. The yarn or fabric was passed through, or padded, with an emulsion of this kind and then exposed to the air, whereby part of the oil was oxidised to a compound insoluble in alkaline carbonates. The operation required, however, a great deal of time and trouble.

At present, rancid Gallipoli is not used at all, or only in a few isolated cases. It has been replaced by the so-called Turkey-red oil (see p. 49), with which the same results can be obtained more simply and more rapidly.

The operation of *oiling* can either take place before mordanting with alumina, or after dyeing, in which latter case the action is assisted by steaming. In some cases Turkey-red oil is added to the dye-bath.

Sumach, or some other form of tannin, is usually added to the dye-bath. It combines with part of the alumina, and thus yields fuller shades. Glue is frequently added besides, in order to render the tannic acid insoluble and thus to prevent it from becoming attached to those parts which must remain white. On heating, the alumina on the fibre decomposes the finely divided compound of tannic acid and glue, and becomes saturated with tannic acid.

In printing it is often desirable to use a strongly alkaline mordant in place of the ordinary mordant for red. Aluminate of soda is generally used for this purpose. The fixation of the mordant is effected by means of a weak solution of ammonium chloride, according to the equation:—

$$\underset{\text{Aluminate of soda.}}{Na_6Al_4O_9} + 6NH_4Cl + H_2O = \underset{\text{Aluminium hydrate.}}{2H_4Al_2O_5} + 6NH_3 + 6NaCl.$$

From this it follows that the alumina is not thrown down in the form of ordinary gelatinous aluminium hydrate, $Al_2(OH)_6$, but in a more granular condition, containing less water of hydration. The printer's colours for steam reds and pinks invariably contain besides thickening, alizarin and a salt of alumina, acetate of lime. The salt of alumina must be one which will be decomposed by the heat of the steaming chamber, and usually consists of acetate of alumina.

The acetate of alumina (prepared from acetate of lead and alum, or by dissolving aluminium hydrate in acetic acid) is decomposed on heating, and the acetic acid liberated helps to dissolve the alizarin, and thus enables it to penetrate the fibres and combine with the alumina. The acetate of lime also helps to dissolve the alizarin, and yields

besides the lime necessary for the formation of the alizarin-lake. When acetate of lime is used, the acetate of alumina is usually replaced by nitrate of alumina; the colours are thus rendered brighter.

The slightest trace of ferric oxide suffices to change the fine red or pink shades of the alumina-lake to a dull red or even a brown. The printer must therefore take special precautions to keep his colour free from iron. But as the latter is in continuous contact with the steel "doctors" of the printing-machine during the operation of printing, traces of iron are always taken up by the colour. Now, the presence of small quantities of iron is no disadvantage as long as it is prevented from entering into the alizarin lake in the ferric state, and this can be prevented in several ways.

Thus an addition of stannous chloride or stannous hydrate reduces all the iron to the ferrous state. Arsenious acid is more effective; it combines with the ferric oxide to form an insoluble salt which is not decomposed by alizarin. An addition of sulphocyanide of potassium to the colour is very serviceable. The iron is oxidised to the ferric state by the nitrate of alumina, and then combines with the sulphocyanide of potassium to form ferric sulphocyanide. In some cases sulphocyanide of potassium is dispensed with, and the whole of the alumina contained in the colour replaced by sulphocyanide of alumina.

The colours containing sulphocyanide of alumina are at the same time excellent resists under other colours which contain strong acids or oxidising agents. If, for instance, alizarin-red is printed and steamed, it can be printed over with aniline-black (of course without being previously washed). The oxides of chlorine which are evolved during the development of the black act on the hydrosulphocyanic acid and on the surplus of sulphocyanide of alumina, and form persulphocyanogen, while the red remains intact.

After steaming, the material must be passed through a

slightly alkaline bath, containing chalk, soluble glass, etc., in order to remove the thickening, the acetic acid produced in steaming, as well as any colour-lake not attached to the fibre, etc. The material can then be soaped, oiled, cleared, etc.

Alkaline solutions of alizarin produce a violet precipitate with ferrous salts, while with ferric salts they yield an almost black precipitate.

The production of *alizarin-violet* on cotton is quite similar to the process of Turkey-red dyeing. The blue shade of alizarin is used for this purpose; the yellow shade cannot be used, since anthrapurpurin yields greyish-violet shades, while flavopurpurin yields a reddish violet.

Ferrous acetate is usually employed as a mordant. It is decomposed in the drying chamber into acetic acid and ferrous hydrate. The material is then passed through cow's dung and chalk, after which it is washed and dyed with alizarin. Arsenite of soda is frequently added to the dye-bath in order to produce faster and brighter shades. It reduces part of the ferric oxide fixed on the fibre to ferrous oxide, and thus gives rise to a compound lake containing ferric and ferrous oxides. The ferrous oxide may be supposed to play the same part in the violet as lime in the red. Arsenious acid also enters into combination in the colour.

The steam colours for fast violet contain ferrous acetate, acetate of lime, alizarin, and a thickening. Arsenite of soda is frequently added besides.

Brown.—Mixtures of iron and alumina mordants produce fine shades of brown. Alizarin-red can also be changed to a brown by an admixture of Prussian blue. In order to produce a brown in this manner, ferrocyanide of potash is mixed with the colour, which is decomposed in steaming by the action of the free acid, and yields Prussian blue.

Puce.—A very fine steam puce can be produced with nitro-acetate of chromium as a mordant.

Wool.—Alizarin, anthrapurpurin and flavopurpurin can be used with advantage in wool-dyeing when it is necessary to produce shades fast to light and milling. They may all be applied in a similar manner and yield similar shades. The colours produced may be varied considerably according to the mordant used.

Wool mordanted with potassium bichromate and dyed in alizarin yields different shades of maroon, which are characterised by their fullness of colour and their "bloom." If in place of alizarin alone, mixtures of alizarin and other artificial or natural colouring matters are used, a great variety of shades can be obtained. Wool may also be dyed by boiling it with alizarin and bichromate in one bath.

Wool mordanted with alum and tartar yields on dyeing with alizarin, or better with anthrapurpurin, a very fine red or scarlet. The addition of chalk or calcium acetate to the dye-bath is essential in order to obtain bright colours. It is also necessary, in order to obtain even colours, to dye very gradually; first cold, then raising the temperature slowly to the boiling point. No good results have hitherto been obtained with alizarin and alum in one bath.

Stannous chloride and oxalic acid used as a mordant yields shades which range from orange to a yellow shade of scarlet. Good results are obtained with stannous chloride, oxalic acid and alizarin in one bath. The colours obtained with tin as a mordant, although fast to light, are rendered dull by milling with soap.

By mordanting the wool with copperas and tartar dull violets are obtained. If much colouring matter is used the violet is so dark as to be almost a black. Alizarin can also be dyed with copperas and oxalic acid in one bath.

Nickel ammonium sulphate and uranium acetate have also been proposed as mordants for alizarin on wool.

Silk.—Alizarin and allied colouring matters may also be applied to silk mordanted with various metallic salts.

After dyeing, the silk is usually brightened by boiling it in a soap-bath. The colours obtained are full and fast, but are only applied in exceptional cases, where fastness is an absolute necessity.

Regeneration of alizarin from spent baths.—It has been mentioned above that the fabrics printed with alizarin are passed through a chalk-bath after steaming. In this operation the surplus of alizarin is removed from the fabric and settles at the bottom of the bath in the form of a lake or lakes, along with the chalk and impurities. In order to regenerate the alizarin, the mud is collected, dissolved in dilute hydrochloric acid, the residue washed with water, dissolved in dilute soda, filtered and precipitated again with hydrochloric acid.

If the colour contains iron, the alizarin may be regenerated by treating with warm dilute sulphuric acid which dissolves all the impurities, but leaves the alizarin behind.

Reactions of Alizarin when Dyed on Textile Fabrics.

Fabrics dyed or printed with alizarin do not part with any of their colour when boiled with solutions of *caustic alkalies*, moderately concentrated. Dilute *acids* have likewise no action. Concentrated acids, however, decompose the colour-lakes and simultaneously remove the metallic base either wholly or partially. The different alizarin colours do not possess the same power of resisting the action of acids; thus the violet is decomposed more easily than ordinary red, while Turkey-red offers the greatest resistance.

In concentrated sulphuric acid, cotton fabrics dissolve at the ordinary temperature along with the alizarin colours fixed to the fibre. If the solution thus obtained is diluted with water, the alizarin is thrown down as a flocculent precipitate, which may be collected in a filter, washed, dried and sublimated, or at least recognised as alizarin by the violet colour it imparts to solutions of the alkalies.

Some *organic*, non-volatile *acids* are known to possess the property of preventing the precipitation of the sesquioxides (ferric oxide, alumina, etc.) from their solutions by means of alkalies or ammonia. These acids have a comparatively strong action on the alizarin colours. If, for instance, Turkey-red cloth is printed with oxalic acid and steamed, the alumina lake is partially decomposed, and a pink design on a red ground is the result.

Strong acid *oxidising agents* like nitric acid or ferric chloride destroy alizarin.

A dilute solution of *chloride of lime* has scarcely any action on Turkey-red, but it gradually destroys the ordinary alizarin-red. Turkey-red will, however, not withstand the simultaneous action of chloride of lime and an acid.

This property has found some application in the production of white designs on a Turkey-red ground.

One method, for instance, of producing designs of this kind is to print the red fabric with tartaric acid, and then pass it through a solution of chloride of lime. Wherever tartaric acid has been printed the colouring matter is destroyed by the action of the chlorine liberated, while at the same time the alumina is dissolved by the excess of tartaric acid.

Potassium bichromate does not attack alizarin, but free chromic acid destroys it. White designs or discharges can therefore also be produced with this compound by passing the fabric through a solution of the bichromate, drying, and subsequently printing with tartaric (or oxalic) acid, which liberates chromic acid and simultaneously dissolves the mordant.

Red prussiate of potash in alkaline solution, otherwise one of the most powerful oxidising agents, is without action on the colours produced with artificial alizarin. Dilute solutions of *permanganate of potash* are likewise without action.

Nitrous fumes convert alizarin-red into alizarin-orange.

The alizarin colours are very fast to *light* and *air*.

The red is, however, temporarily affected by *heat*. When the fabrics are dried in the usual manner over cylinders heated by steam, it parts with some of its brilliancy and acquires a slight cast of brown. The original colour is, however, almost completely restored by exposing the goods to the air. It is probable that the alizarin-red lake contains some water of hydration, which is partly given off in drying, but is taken up again in a moist atmosphere.

Detection on the fibre.—In order to detect the presence of alizarin in red, brown, violet or black cotton fabrics, the above reaction with concentrated sulphuric acid will suffice. But in case the sample of material is too small, or the colours too light (containing only a small percentage of alizarin), the following characteristic reactions are resorted to :—

Ammonia and soda have no action on the colour, neither has a dilute solution of chloride of lime. The material is decolourised by boiling it with a mixture of 2 parts alcohol, and 1 part concentrated hydrochloric acid. This latter reaction is of value in distinguishing between alizarin-black and logwood-black, which latter is destroyed even by dilute acids, colouring the solution red. It also serves to distinguish between alizarin-black and aniline-black, which latter is not affected, or at least only turned to a greenish shade.

Alizarin-red is turned violet when boiled with barium hydrate.

Materials dyed with alizarin can be distinguished from those dyed with madder or with preparations of madder by boiling them with a solution of aluminium sulphate. The latter yield a fluorescent solution (see Purpurin, p. 220).

The spectroscope may render good services in the detection of alizarin and allied colouring matters, as they all give in ammoniacal solution (aqueous or alcoholic) characteristic bands of absorption.

Alizarin is used at present pretty largely in wool-dyeing. But as it is seldom used as a self colour, and is nearly always mixed with one or more natural or artificial colouring matters, its detection is often very difficult and tedious.

Application of Purpurin.

Almost all colours which are at present obtained with artificial alizarin, were formerly produced with madder or preparations of madder. The latter contains very little anthra- or flavo-purpurin, but in place of these we find purpurin.

It might therefore be inferred that a mixture of the blue shade of alizarin and Lalande's artificial purpurin would yield the best substitute for madder. Nevertheless, purpurin is not used in the large scale. When used in the form of the crude product it gives an inferior steam red verging into a brown. But in the purified state, it is said to yield a most brilliant scarlet.

The colours produced with artificial alizarin are faster than those produced with purpurin. The latter are destroyed by alkaline solutions of red prussiate and by a 1 per-cent. solution of permanganate.

In order to estimate the amount of pure purpurin in a sample of the commercial product, a weighed quantity is boiled with a solution of aluminium sulphate, filtered from the undissolved alizarin, etc., and the purpurin precipitated in the filtrate by the addition of an acid. The precipitate is collected in a filter, washed, dried and weighed.

For the detection of small quantities of alizarin in a sample of purpurin an alkaline solution is prepared and exposed to the light until all the purpurin is destroyed. The unchanged sodium alizarate is then decomposed with dilute sulphuric acid, the liquid extracted with ether, evaporated to dryness, and the residue tested in the usual way for alizarin.

Alizarin-carmine.

The preparation of an alizarin sulphonic acid is effected by acting on 1 part of alizarin with 3 parts of concentrated sulphuric acid containing 20 per cent. of anhydride, at 100°—150° C. The heating is continued until a sample dissolves completely in water. The product is then dissolved in water and the excess of sulphuric acid precipitated by barium hydrate or milk of lime. The filtrate is neutralised and evaporated down.

The product of the reaction is alizarin monosulphonic acid, $C_{14}H_5O_2(OH)_2SO_3H$. The free acid is soluble in water and yields three series of salts. Those of the general formula, $C_{14}H_5O_2(OH)_2SO_3M$, are yellow or orange, and are soluble in water. The sodium-salt, $C_{14}H_5O_2(OH)_2SO_3Na$, is decomposed by sulphuric acid, but not by hydrochloric acid.

The alkali-salts corresponding to the general formula $C_{14}H_5O_2(OH)(OM)SO_3M$, are reddish violet, those of the alkaline earths reddish yellow.

The salts of the general formula $C_{14}H_5O_2(OM)_2SO_3M$, are the most easily soluble, and coloured intensely violet.

In spite of the advantages which alizarin-carmine presents as a strongly acid colouring matter, soluble in water, it has nevertheless not met with any success in wool-dyeing, since it lacks brilliancy when compared with the other red dyes, such as cochineal, the azo-scarlets, and the eosins. The free acid does not dye wool directly, and it is necessary in order to obtain a red to mordant first with aluminium. The aluminium-salt which is soluble in water will, however, dye wool in one bath.

Tin mordants yield orange shades, while with chromium mordants dark red shades can be produced.

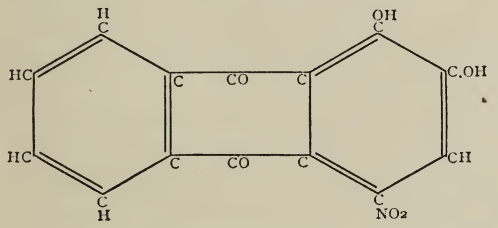
Alizarin-orange.

Hitherto, two mono-nitro derivatives of alizarin have been produced, which are distinguished as α and β nitro-

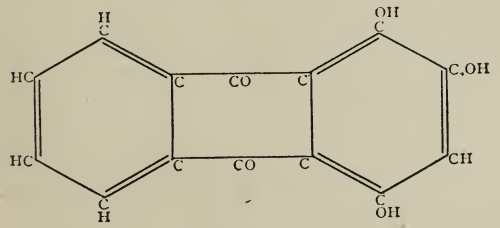
alizarin. The β compound is the chief constituent of commercial *alizarin-orange*.

For the preparation of this colouring matter, alizarin (blue shade) is treated in solution or in a finely divided state with nitrous fumes. The raw product is purified by dissolving it in sodium carbonate, filtering and precipitating again with an acid.

If β nitro-alizarin is reduced, an amido-alizarin is formed, which, when treated with nitrous acid, can be transformed into purpurin, $C_{14}H_5O_2(OH)_3$. The constitutional formula of β nitro-alizarin must therefore be—



β Nitro-alizarin.



Purpurin.

Pure nitro-alizarin forms yellow needles or leaflets which melt at 244°. At a higher temperature it sublimates with partial decomposition. It possesses stronger acid properties than alizarin.

Nitro-alizarin is almost insoluble in water, but will dissolve in glacial acetic acid. In concentrated sulphuric acid it dissolves with a golden-yellow colour.

The alkali-salts dissolve in water with a red colour, but they are insoluble in strong alkaline lyes. Nitro-alizarin can therefore only be dissolved in dilute alkalies. The other metallic salts are insoluble in water.

Alizarin-orange is brought into commerce in the form of a paste containing 10—20 per cent. of dry substance. The colouring matter is not in such a fine state of division as those of the alizarin pastes, and if allowed to stand, it settles to the bottom.

In order to detect impurities or unchanged alizarin, a sample is dissolved in dilute caustic soda, filtered (if necessary), and treated with an excess of concentrated caustic soda. The nitro-alizarin is thereby completely precipitated as the sodium-salt, and the filtrate can easily be tested for alizarin.

With alumina mordants, nitro-alizarin yields an orange, with iron mordants, a red shade of violet.

Application.—Alizarin-orange is used chiefly in calico-printing as a steam colour, and is fixed just like alizarin. The colour for printing contains besides alizarin-orange, aluminium nitrate, calcium acetate, and a thickener. It does not keep so well as that prepared with alizarin, since nitro-alizarin is a much stronger acid, and has a great tendency to form lakes, even in the cold. This may be checked to some extent by the addition of some acetic acid; nevertheless, the colour must be used as soon as prepared, otherwise it becomes red and does not yield an orange, but a dull yellow.

This rapid change is a great drawback in the application of alizarin-orange.

According to Kielmeyer, the addition of calcium hyposulphate in place of calcium acetate will make the colour keep for at least a day. The introduction of aluminium sulphocyanide in place of aluminium nitrate will no doubt further the application of alizarin-orange. The colours prepared with this mordant are said to keep very well.

The material is invariably oiled before printing. After steaming, the colour is dull, and is only developed into a bright shade after treatment with a boiling soap solution.

If red prussiate of potash is added to the colour before printing, some Prussian blue is formed along with the nitro-alizarin alumina lake. Fine shades of *brown* can be produced in this manner.

Alizarin-orange is exceedingly fast; it is not attacked by solutions of chloride of lime, but it is destroyed by the joint action of chloride of lime and acids.

Alizarin-orange is used to some extent in wool-dyeing on account of the fastness of the shades produced. With an alumina mordant it yields bright shades of orange; with bichromate of potash, brown shades of orange. It is generally applied on wool along with other colouring matters for the production of mixed shades. Thus when used along with coeruleïn, alizarin-blue, or alizarin, very beautiful effects can be obtained.

Detection on the fibre.—The colour is brightened by boiling with soap, but it is stripped with an orange colour by ammonia or caustic soda. If boiled with barium hydrate the sample is turned violet. An acid solution of stannous chloride strips with a yellow colour.

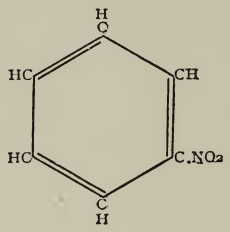
Alizarin-blue.
(Anthracene-blue.)

Alizarin-blue is prepared in the following manner:—

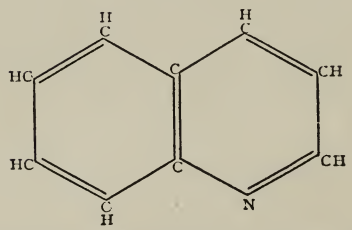
One part of dry and finely pulverised nitro-alizarin is heated with 5 parts of dehydrated glycerine, and 5 parts concentrated sulphuric acid, to 150°. After the reaction is over, the melt is boiled with an excess of water, when the colouring matter passes into solution in the shape of its sulphuric acid compound. On cooling it falls in the form of a brown flocculent precipitate, which when washed with water loses its acid and becomes blue.

Alizarin-blue occurs in commerce as a dark violet paste containing 10 per cent. of dry substance. The pure colouring matter can be obtained from the dried paste by crystallising repeatedly from glacial acetic acid and naphtha. In the pure state it forms brown-violet needles which melt at 270°, and may be partially sublimated. It is insoluble in water, and only sparingly soluble in benzene and alcohol.

The empirical formula of alizarin-blue is $C_{17}H_9NO_4$. It is closely allied to quinoline, C_9H_7N, which is obtained in a similar manner by heating nitro-benzene and glycerine with concentrated sulphuric acid.

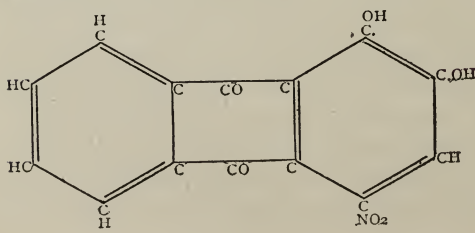


$$+ \quad \begin{matrix} CH_2OH \\ | \\ CHOH \\ | \\ CH_2OH \end{matrix} \quad =$$

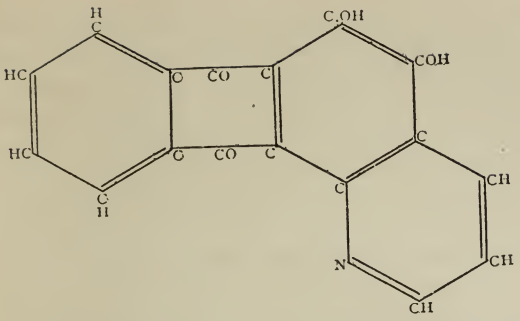


$$+ \ 3H_2O + O_2.$$

Alizarin-blue is formed according to the equation—



$$+ \quad \begin{matrix} CH_2OH \\ | \\ CHOH \\ | \\ CH_2OH \end{matrix} \quad =$$



$+ 3H_2O + O$.

Alizarin-blue is therefore the quinoline of alizarin. It contains both hydroxyl groups of alizarin unchanged, and is therefore an acid. On the other hand, however, the quinoline complex imparts basic properties to the compound, and alizarin-blue will therefore combine with acids to form unstable compounds. Thus it will crystallise from glacial acetic acid, and from dilute sulphuric acid as a brown salt containing one equivalent of acid. But these compounds are so loose that they are decomposed by washing with water. In concentrated sulphuric acid, alizarin-blue dissolves with a red colour, while in arsenic acid and phosphoric acid it dissolves with a red-yellow colour.

With dilute caustic alkalies it yields a green-blue solution, from which it is precipitated by excess of alkali. All the other salts are insoluble in water. They are obtained by precipitating the alkaline solutions of alizarin-blue with the corresponding metallic salts. Alizarin-blue yields with lime, baryta, and ferric oxide, greenish blue, with nickel, blue, and with alumina and chromium, bluish-violet lakes.

The affinity of alizarin-blue for some bases is so great that in some cases it will expel even sulphuric acid from its compounds (e.g. from copper sulphate).

In alkaline solution it may be reduced with zinc powder to a red liquid, which when exposed to the air resumes its original colour, and therefore forms a vat like indigo.

Application. — The application of alizarin-blue for dyeing on the large scale is somewhat restricted. Its insolubility in water, and its tendency to form insoluble lime-lakes are not in its favour. In vat-dyeing it cannot compete with indigo on account of its high price.

For printing, similar methods are in vogue as those used for indigo. The colour for printing can be made up with stannous oxide and caustic soda which reduces and at the same time dissolves the colouring matter. After printing, the colour is developed by exposure to the air, and washing in running water. The results obtained by this method have however not been very satisfactory.

The best *steam colour* is obtained with chromium acetate. An addition of magnesium chloride or calcium chloride produces a faster and at the same time a purer blue.

The greatest drawback in alizarin blue fixed in this manner is that it is not nearly so fast to light as indigo.

If the colours printed or dyed on calico are exposed to sunlight, they become yellowish, and after soaping, pale violet.

Alizarin-blue stands the action of oxidising agents better than indigo ; it is not so easily attacked by chloride of lime, chromic acid, and alkaline ferricyanide of potash.

Alizarin-blue S.—Like coeruleïn, alizarin-blue can be transformed into a dry powder soluble in water. The commercial paste is mixed with a concentrated solution of sodium bisulphate, and after standing for 8–14 days, the liquid is filtered, and the solid compound obtained by evaporating down or salting out.

Alizarin-blue S is a dark purple powder which is easily soluble in water. The brown-red solution is decomposed by strong acids and by soda; it is also decomposed if heated above 70°. The colour can, however, be mixed without undergoing any change with salts of chromium, lime, or magnesia, as well as with acetic or tartaric acid. The decomposition only takes place on steaming.

Alizarin-blue S is not only distinguished from ordinary alizarin-blue by its solubility and easier application, but also by its greater fastness to light. It has consequently almost completely replaced ordinary alizarin-blue in printing and dyeing.

In wool-dyeing, alizarin-blue S promises to be a great success as a substitute for indigo. The wool is first mordanted with bichromate of potash and sulphuric acid, and afterwards dyed in alizarin-blue S. In the dyeing it is necessary to observe certain precautions. In the first place, the water should contain no lime, or if lime is present, it should be neutralised with acetic acid. Secondly, it is necessary, in order to obtain full and even shades, to dye very gradually, working first for some time in the cold, and than gradually raising the temperature to a boil. In case the water contains bicarbonate of lime in solution, it should be neutralised before dying with acetic acid. Beautiful deep-blue shades can be obtained in this manner which are as fast as indigo to light and milling, and besides possess a characteristic bloom.

Detection on the fibre.—Alizarin-blue is turned bluish-green by alkalies, while dilute hydrochloric acid turns it violet. Nitric acid decolourises, or in case the blue is dyed on wool with a mordant of bichromate, it produces an orange spot. An acid solution of stannous chloride turns the colour to a brownish-yellow. Solutions of soap, soda, and chloride of lime are without action.

Phosphoric acid (sp. gr. 1·435) gives an orange solution, which when diluted with water is turned blue again by ammonia.

The spectroscope may also be used for detecting alizarin-blue.

INDEX.

PAGE

Acid green 84
„ magenta 96
„ yellow 182
Aldehyde green 117
Alizarin, absorption spectra of .. 16
„ properties of 217
„ preparation of pure .. 216
„ qualitative analysis of 222
„ valuation of 223
„ application to cotton .. 223
„ red 224
„ pink 224
„ violet 230
„ brown 230
„ puce 230
„ application to wool .. 231
„ „ „ „ silk .. 231
„ regeneration from spent baths 232
„ reactions on the fibre 232
„ detection of 234
„ carmine 236
„ orange 236
„ „ application .. 238
„ „ detection .. 239
Alizarin blue 239
„ „ properties 240
„ „ application .. 242
„ „ detection 243
Alizarin blue S. 242
Alkali blue 102
„ green 85
Alpha naphthol 142
„ naphthylamine sulphonic acids 188
Amidoazobenzene 179

PAGE

Amidoazo-dyes 178
Amidophenetol 188
Amines, primary, secondary, and tertiary 30
Amaranth 93
Aniline 3, 77
„ for blue 78
„ „ red 78
„ black 3, 125
„ blue from rosaniline .. 97
„ „ „ diphenylamine 98
„ orange 114
„ red 86
„ yellow 182
Anisidine 188
Anisol red 195
Anthracene 2, 68, 72
„ colouring matters derived from, ... 212
Anthraflavic acid 222
Anthrapurpurin 218
Anthraquinon 213
„ sulphonic acids 215
Artificial indigo 207
„ effects of light on .. 59
Auramine 136
Aurantia 152
Aureosin J. 164
Aurin 157
Azaleïne 93
Azarin 202
Azo dyes 174
„ reduction of 197
„ application of 198
„ detection of 201
„ bisulphite compounds of 201

PAGE
Azo dyes derived from benzidine 202
Azo-blue 204
Azurine 129

Bases in coal tar 65
Benzadhyde 81
Benzal green 81
Benzene 2, 68
Benzopurpurin 204
Benzotrichloride 81
Benzylrosaniline violet 107
Beta naphthol 142
„ „ monosulphonic .. 189
„ „ disulphonic acids 190
Biebrich scarlet 195
Bismarck brown 181
Bleu fluorescent 155
„ lumière 98
Boiled-off liquor 40
Bordeaux 195
Bromnitrofluoresceïn 164

Canelle 181
Carbolic acid, separation of, from coal tar 68
Cardinal 93
Cellulose 41
Cerise 93
Chemical constitution 26
Chestnut brown 116
China blue 103
Chromophorous groups 28
Chrysamin 203
Chrysaniline 115
Chrysoidine 179
„ detection of 180
Chrysöin 194
Chrysolin 162
Cinnamic acid 207
Cinnamon brown 181
Claret-red G. 195
„ R. 195
Coal gas, introduction of 2
Coal tar 64
„ distillation of 65
„ colours, classification of the 75
Coccinin 195

PAGE
Coeruleïn 170
„ application 171
„ preparation 170
„ properties 170
Coeruleïn S 171
„ detection of 172
Colorimetry 60
Colouring matters, acid 32
„ „ adjective .. 44
„ „ basic 29
„ „ general chemical properties of .. 26
„ „ impurities in 60
„ „ estimation of 61–63
„ „ methods of dissolving .. 34
„ „ mixtures of 22
„ „ natural and artificial .. 1
„ „ neutral .. 34
„ „ optical properties of .. 5
„ „ the relation of the fibres to 43
„ „ solvents for 37, 38
„ „ substantive .. 43
„ „ the testing of 56
Colours, fast and loose 53
„ action of various agents on 54, 55, 56
Commercial alizarin 220
Comparative dye trials 57
Complementary colours 6
Congo red 203
Corallin red 158
„ yellow 157
Cotton 41
„ blue 103
Crocëin scarlet 195
Crystal violet 108

Dahlia 105
Diamidoazobenzene 179
Dichroism 17
Dimethylaniline 81
Disazo compounds 192
Dunging, process of 225
Dyeing, general principles of 44–47

	PAGE
Emeraldine	128
Eosin	3
„ absorption spectra of	15
„ B.	164
„ blue shade	164
„ B. N.	164
„ „ soluble in spirit	164
„ J.	163
„ yellow shade	163
Eosins	163
„ application of the	167
„ detection of the	168
„ reactions of the	165
Erythrosin	164
Ethyl blue	99
„ eosin	164
Ethylene blue	135
Fast red	195
„ yellow	182
Fibroine	39
Flavaniline	205
Flavopurpurin	218
Fluoreseïn	161
Fluorescence	25
Fluorescent resorcin blue	154
Formula, empirical and constitutional	27
Fuchsin	93
Gallein	169
„ application of	170
Gold orange	184
Green grease	66
Grenat, soluble	145
Heavy oil	66
Helianthin	184
„ application of	185
„ detection of	185
Heliochrysin	151
Helvetia green	84
Hofmann's violet	105
Hydro carbons	64
Indophenoles	172
„ application of	173
„ detection of	173
„ preparation of	172
Indophenoles, properties of	173
Induline	118
Inks, coloured	35
Intensity	6
Isopurpuric acid	145
Isopurpurin	218
Lakes	33
Leuco-bases	79
Liebermanns' phenol dye-stuffs	154
Light green S.	84
Light oil	66
Lutécienne	164
Magdala red	120
Magenta	3, 86
„ absorption spectrum of	15
„ application of	94
„ detection of	94
„ „ „ in food, etc.	95
„ manufacture of	90
„ S.	96
„ testing of	93
„ violet	93
Malachite green	81
„ „ application of	83
„ „ properties of	83
Manchester yellow	148
Mandarin	194
Maroon	116
Martius yellow	148
Mauveïne	3, 117
Methyl blue	99
„ eosin	164
„ green	109
„ „ application of	112
„ „ detection on the fibre	113
„ „ preparation of	109
„ „ properties of	110
„ violet	105
„ „ B.	107
„ „ detection of	107
„ „ preparation of	105
„ „ properties of	106
Methylene blue	132
„ „ application of	134
„ „ detection of	135
„ „ preparation of	132

PAGE
Methylene blue, properties .. 134
Mordants (albuminous and gelatinous) 52
„ colouring matters as 53
„ double cyanides .. 48
„ metallic sulphides .. 48
„ oil 49
„ silica 48
„ soap 50
„ sulphur 48
„ tannin 51

Naphthalene 2, 71
„ red 120
„ „ application of 122
„ „ detection of .. 122
„ „ properties of .. 121
„ violet 131
Naphthamein 131
Naphtholes 142
Naphthol green 153
„ yellow 148
„ „ S. 150
Naphthylamines 78
New green 81
„ red 93
Nigrosine 118
Nitrobenzene 76
„ reduction of 76
Nitrotoluenes 76

Orange I. 194
„ II. 194
„ III. 184
„ IV. 185
„ -yellow 194
Oxyanthraquinon 221
Oxyazo dyes 186
„ raw materials used in the manufacture of 187
„ manufacture of the 190
„ general properties of 193

Paris violet 105
Parma blue 198
Peonin 158
Phenicienne 147
Phenol 2, 65, 72
Phenetol red 195

PAGE
Phenyl brown 147
„ violet 104
Phenylenediamine (meta) .. 180
Phenylene brown 181
Phosphine 114
Phloxin 165
Phthaleïns 159
Picric acid 143
„ absorption spectra of .. 14
Picramic acid 144
Pitch 66
Primary colours 6
Primula 105
Propiolic acid 207
„ application of 210
Purpurin 219
„ application of 235
Pyrogallic acid 141
Pyrosin R. 164

Quinoline yellow 206

Resorcin 140
„ brown 192
Roccellin 195
Rosaniline, The—group 78
„ synthesis of 86
„ salts of 91
Rosa-naphthylamine 120
Roseïne 93
Rose Bengale 165
„ J. B. 164
Rosolic acids 156
Rubein 193
„ S. .. .. : 96
Rubeosin 164

Safranin 122
Saffrosin 164
Salt forming groups 29
Saturated colours 6
Secondary azo compounds .. 191
Sericine 39
Scarlet G. 194
„ G. T. 194
„ G. 194
„ R. 194
„ R. R. 195
„ 4 R. 195

	PAGE
Scarlet S.	195
Silk	38
„ ash of	39
„ action of chemical agents	39
„ discharging of	40
„ gum	39
„ weighting of	52, 146
Solid green	81
Soluble blue	103
„ primrose	164
Souple	40
Solvent naphtha	65
Spectra	11
„ absorption	12
„ „ of organic colouring matters	13
„ discontinuous	11
„ line	11
Spectroscope, The	10
„ as a means of detecting colouring matters	25
Spirit blue	98
„ primrose	164
„ violet	104
Sulphonic acids	33
Sun gold	151
Suint	41
Tartar emetic	51
Tetrabromfluorescein	163
Tetraioddfluorescein	164
Tetramethyldiamidobenzophenon	136
Tetrazo-dyes	191, 202
Tin spirits	51
Toluene	2, 69
Toluidine	76
„ Ortho	77
„ Para	77
Triamido azo benzene	181
Tropaeolin	185
„ Y.	194
„ R.	194
„ O.	194
„ OOO No. 1.	194
„ OOO No. 2.	194
„ 4 O.	194
Turkey red oil	49
Vesuvine	181
Victoria blue	138
„ green	81
„ yellow	148
Violaniline	118
Viridine	85
Water blue	103
Wool	41
Xyline	70
Xylidine red	190
Yolk	41

LONDON: PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

INSTITUTE LIBRARY

IN COURSE OF PUBLICATION:

A SERIES OF

TECHNOLOGICAL HAND-BOOKS.

UNDER THE GENERAL EDITORSHIP OF

H. Trueman Wood, B.A.,

Secretary to the Society of Arts.

IN 1873 the Society of Arts instituted Technological Examinations—Examinations, that is, in the theory of certain specified trades. In 1879 these Examinations were transferred to the City and Guilds Institute for the advancement of Technical Training, and considerable alterations were made in the system. Immediately on the foundation of these Examinations it became evident that the good they could effect was but partial. They supplied a test for the artisan's theoretical knowledge, but they supplied no means by which such knowledge could be acquired.

Funds subscribed by the Clothworkers' Company enabled the Society of Arts to establish, or promote the establishment of, a few classes, on the model of the South Kensington Science classes. The system thus commenced was extended by the City Institute, and there are now about 120 classes at which instruction is given to students in preparation for the Examinations.

Thus the want of teaching has been, at all events partially, supplied.

But the establishment of the Technological Examinations rendered manifest another want besides that of instructors, and that was the want of books in which a workman belonging to any particular trade could obtain the information he required about the theory of that trade. Whether he wished to study for the Examinations by himself—and there are many who are not in a position to attend classes—or whether he wished merely to gain the knowledge which would be, of all knowledge, most serviceable to him, or whether even he was attending a class and required a text-book to guide his studies in it, no such book was, in most cases, available for him. Many technical books are too costly, many more are of necessity written in a style unsuited for men who have had little or no scientific training, while, in many cases, no book at all exists which deals with the technology of the particular industry with which the student is connected.

So long as the number of candidates for the Technological Examinations was small, it seemed as if text-books, intended mainly for their use, would hardly have secured a sufficient number of readers to justify their production ; but the rapidly increasing number of candidates,[1] is good evidence that a demand for such works exists and is growing.

These are the circumstances which have led to the preparation of the present series. It is intended eventually

[1] The total number in 1879 was 202 ; this grew to 803 in 1880, and there were reported in April last to be 2,500 candidates preparing for examination in May.

to include all the industries specified in the programme of the City Institute ; but at first those branches of manufacture have been selected for treatment in which it appears that text-books are most required.

The books will be prepared by eminent writers, familiar not only with the scientific principles involved in each trade, but with the practical details. They will be addressed to workmen and apprentices, who may be supposed to have some knowledge of the practical, if not of the theoretical, portions of their business. At the same time—since the books are intended for learners—the possession of such knowledge will not be assumed, but it will be for the most part taken for granted that the student will have in his workshop the opportunity of studying the various processes of which he reads, so that practice and theory may go hand in hand.

The books will not be, in any sense, cram books. They will not be written with a view to enable candidates to answer a paper of questions; but they will, if the intentions of those who are preparing them can be carried out, provide for all interested in our great manufacturing industries, knowledge which, while it may to a certain extent be tested—as may all knowledge—by Examination questions, will also stand the more real and severe tests of practical work.

The series will be edited by Mr. H. Trueman Wood, the Secretary of the Society of Arts, who prepared for the City Institute the revised scheme of Examinations. This scheme is now in force, scarcely any changes in it having been made, and it is under it that the great increase of numbers has taken place.

TECHNOLOGICAL HAND-BOOKS,

EDITED BY H. TRUEMAN WOOD, B.A.,

SECRETARY TO THE SOCIETY OF ARTS.

1. Dyeing and Tissue-Printing. By William Crookes, F.R.S., V.P.C.S. *Price 5s.*

2. Glass Manufacture. Introductory Essay, by H. J. Powell, B.A. (Whitefriars Glass Works); Crown and Sheet Glass, by Henry Chance, M.A. (Chance Bros., Birmingham); Plate Glass, by H. G. Harris, Assoc. Memb. Inst. C.E. *Illustrated. Price 3s. 6d.*

3. Cotton Spinning: Its Development, Principles, and Practice, with an Appendix on Steam Boilers and Engines. By R. Marsden, Editor of the "Textile Manufacturer." *Illustrated. Price 6s. 6d.*

4. Woollen Manufacture. By C. Vickerman. [*In the press.*

5. Telegraphs and Telephones. By W. H. Preece, F.R.S., Memb. Inst. C.E., Electrician to the General Post Office. [*Preparing.*

Others preparing.

LONDON: GEORGE BELL AND SONS,

York Street, Covent Garden.

CATALOGUE OF
BOHN'S LIBRARIES.

N.B.—It is requested that all orders be accompanied by payment. Books are sent carriage free on the receipt of the published price in stamps or otherwise.

The Works to which the letters 'N. S.' (denoting New Style) are appended are kept in neat cloth bindings of various colours, as well as in the regular Library style. All Orders are executed in the New binding, unless the contrary is expressly stated.

Complete Sets or Separate Volumes can be had at short notice, half-bound in calf or morocco.

New Volumes of Standard Works in the various branches of Literature are constantly being added to this Series, which is already unsurpassed in respect to the number, variety, and cheapness of the Works contained in it. The Publishers have to announce the following Volumes as recently issued or now in preparation :—

Boswell's Life of Johnson. New Edition. 6 vols. [*Ready, see p.* 1.

Vasari's Lives of the Painters. Additional Notes by J. P. Richter. *Ready, see p.* 8.

Roger Ascham's Scholemaster. Edited by Prof. Mayor.

Grimm's German Tales. 2 vols. With the Notes of the Original. [*Ready, see p.* 5.

Coleridge's Table-Talk, &c. [*Ready, see p.* 4.

Coleridge's Miscellaneous Works. [*In the press.*

Manual of Philosophy. By E. Belfort Bax. 1 vol.

Goldsmith's Works. Vols. I. and II. [*Ready, see p.* 5.

Fairholt's History of Costume. [*In the press.*

Hoffmann's Stories. Translated by Major Ewing. [*In the press.*

LONDON : G. BELL & SONS, 4 YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN.

BOHN'S LIBRARIES.

STANDARD LIBRARY.

294 *Vols. at* 3*s.* 6*d. each, excepting those marked otherwise.* (51*l.* 10*s.* 6*d. per set.*)

ADDISON'S Works. Notes of Bishop Hurd. Short Memoir, Portrait, and 8 Plates of Medals. 6 vols. *N. S.*
This is the most complete edition of Addison's Works issued.

ALFIERI'S Tragedies. In English Verse. With Notes, Arguments, and Introduction, by E. A. Bowring, C.B. 2 vols. *N. S.*

AMERICAN POETRY. — *See Poetry of America.*

ASCHAM'S Scholemaster. Edit. by by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. [*In the press.*

BACON'S Moral and Historical Works, including Essays, Apophthegms, Wisdom of the Ancients, New Atlantis, Henry VII., Henry VIII., Elizabeth, Henry Prince of Wales, History of Great Britain, Julius Cæsar, and Augustus Cæsar. With Critical and Biographical Introduction and Notes by J. Devey, M.A. Portrait. *N. S.*

—— *See also Philosophical Library.*

BALLADS AND SONGS of the Peasantry of England, from Oral Recitation, private MSS., Broadsides, &c. Edit. by R. Bell. *N. S.*

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER. Selections. With Notes and Introduction by Leigh Hunt.

BECKMANN (J.) History of Inventions, Discoveries, and Origins. With Portraits of Beckmann and James Watt. 2 vols. *N. S.*

BELL (Robert).—*See Ballads, Chaucer, Green.*

BOSWELL'S Life of Johnson, with the TOUR in the HEBRIDES and JOHNSONIANA. New Edition, with Notes and Appendices, by the Rev. A. Napier, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge, Vicar of Holkham, Editor of the Cambridge Edition of the 'Theological Works of Barrow.' With Frontispiece to each vol. 6 vols. *N.S.*

BREMER'S (Frederika) Works. Trans. by M. Howitt. Portrait. 4 vols. *N.S.*

BRINK (B. T.) Early English Literature (to Wiclif). By Bernhard Ten Brink. Trans. by Prof. H. M. Kennedy. *N. S.*

BRITISH POETS, from Milton to Kirke White. Cabinet Edition. With Frontispiece. 4 vols. *N. S.*

BROWNE'S (Sir Thomas) Works. Edit. by S. Wilkin, with Dr. Johnson's Life of Browne. Portrait. 3 vols.

BURKE'S Works. 6 vols. *N. S.*

—— **Speeches on the Impeachment** of Warren Hastings; and Letters. 2 vols. *N. S.*

—— **Life.** By J. Prior. Portrait. *N. S.*

BURNS (Robert). Life of. By J. G. Lockhart, D.C.L. A new and enlarged edition. With Notes and Appendices by W. S. Douglas. Portrait. *N. S.*

BUTLER'S (Bp.) Analogy of Religion; Natural and Revealed, to the Constitution and Course of Nature; with Two Dissertations on Identity and Virtue, and Fifteen Sermons. With Introductions, Notes, and Memoir. Portrait. *N. S.*

CAMOEN'S Lusiad, or the Discovery of India. An Epic Poem. Trans. from the Portuguese, with Dissertation, Historical Sketch, and Life, by W. J. Mickle. 5th edition. *N. S.*

CARAFAS (The) of Maddaloni. Naples under Spanish Dominion. Trans. by Alfred de Reumont. Portrait of Massaniello.

CARREL. The Counter-Revolution in England for the Re-establishment of Popery under Charles II. and James II., by Armand Carrel; with Fox's History of James II. and Lord Lonsdale's Memoir of James II. Portrait of Carrel.

CARRUTHERS. — *See Pope, in Illustrated Library.*

CARY'S Dante. The Vision of Hell, Purgatory, and Paradise. Trans. by Rev. H. F. Cary, M.A. With Life, Chronological View of his Age, Notes, and Index of Proper Names. Portrait. *N. S.*

This is the authentic edition, containing Mr. Cary's last corrections, with additional notes.

CELLINI (Benvenuto). Memoirs of, by himself. With Notes of G. P. Carpani. Trans. by T. Roscoe. Portrait. *N. S.*

CERVANTES' Galatea. A Pastoral Romance. Trans. by G. W. J. Gyll. *N. S.*

—— **Exemplary Novels.** Trans. by W. K. Kelly. *N. S.*

—— **Don Quixote de la Mancha.** Motteux's Translation revised. With Lockhart's Life and Notes. 2 vols. *N. S.*

CHAUCER'S Poetical Works. With Poems formerly attributed to him. With a Memoir, Introduction, Notes, and a Glossary, by R. Bell. Improved edition, with Preliminary Essay by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Portrait. 4 vols. *N. S.*

CLASSIC TALES, containing Rasselas, Vicar of Wakefield, Gulliver's Travels, and The Sentimental Journey. *N. S.*

COLERIDGE'S (S. T.) Friend. A Series of Essays on Morals, Politics, and Religion. Portrait. *N. S.*

—— **Confessions of an Inquiring** Spirit; and Essays on Faith and the Common Prayer-book. New Edition, revised. *N. S.*

—— **Aids to Reflection.** *N.S.*

—— **Table-Talk and Omniana.** By T. Ashe, B.A. *N.S.*

—— **Lectures on Shakspere and** other Poets. Edit. by T. Ashe, B.A. *N.S.*

Containing the lectures taken down in 1811-12 by J. P. Collier, and those delivered at Bristol in 1813.

—— **Biographia Literaria; or, Biographical** Sketches of my Literary Life and Opinions; with Two Lay Sermons. *N. S.*

COMMINES.—*See Philip.*

CONDÉ'S History of the Dominion of the Arabs in Spain. Trans. by Mrs. Foster. Portrait of Abderahmen ben Moavia. 3 vols.

COWPER'S Complete Works, Poems, Correspondence, and Translations. Edit. with Memoir by R. Southey. 45 Engravings. 8 vols.

COXE'S Memoirs of the Duke of Marlborough. With his original Correspondence, from family records at Blenheim. Revised edition. Portraits. 3 vols.

*** An Atlas of the plans of Marlborough's campaigns, 4to. 10*s.* 6*d.*

COXE'S History of the House of Austria. From the Foundation of the Monarchy by Rhodolph of Hapsburgh to the Death of Leopold II., 1218-1792. By Archdn. Coxe. With Continuation from the Accession of Francis I. to the Revolution of 1848. 4 Portraits. 4 vols.

CUNNINGHAM'S Lives of the most Eminent British Painters. With Notes and 16 fresh Lives by Mrs. Heaton. 3 vols. *N. S.*

DEFOE'S Novels and Miscellaneous Works. With Prefaces and Notes, including those attributed to Sir W. Scott. Portrait. 7 vols. *N. S.*

DE LOLME'S Constitution of England, in which it is compared both with the Republican form of Government and the other Monarchies of Europe. Edit., with Life and Notes, by J. Macgregor, M.P.

EMERSON'S Works. 3 vols. Most complete edition published. *N. S.*

Vol. I.—Essays, Lectures, and Poems.

Vol. II.—English Traits, Nature, and Conduct of Life.

Vol. III.—Society and Solitude—Letters and Social Aims—Miscellaneous Papers (hitherto uncollected)—May-Day, &c.

FOSTER'S (John) Life and Correspondence. Edit. by J. E. Ryland. Portrait. 2 vols. *N. S.*

—— **Lectures at Broadmead Chapel.** Edit. by J. E. Ryland. 2 vols. *N. S.*

—— **Critical Essays contributed to** the 'Eclectic Review.' Edit. by J. E. Ryland. 2 vols. *N. S.*

—— **Essays: On Decision of Charac**ter; on a Man's writing Memoirs of Himself; on the epithet Romantic; on the aversion of Men of Taste to Evangelical Religion. *N. S.*

—— **Essays on the Evils of Popular** Ignorance, and a Discourse on the Propagation of Christianity in India. *N. S.*

—— **Fosteriana:** selected from periodical papers, edit. by H. G. Bohn. 5*s.* *N. S.*

FOX (Rt. Hon. C. J.)—*See Carrel.*

GIBBON'S Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. Complete and unabridged, with variorum Notes; including those of Guizot, Wenck, Niebuhr, Hugo, Neander, and others. 7 vols. 2 Maps and Portrait. *N. S.*

GOETHE'S Works. Trans. into English by E. A. Bowring, C.B., Anna Swanwick, Sir Walter Scott, &c. &c. 12 vols. *N. S.*

Vols. I. and II.—Autobiography and Annals. Portrait.

Vol. III.—Faust. Complete.

GOETHE'S Works.—*Continued.*

Vol. IV.—Novels and Tales: containing Elective Affinities, Sorrows of Werther, The German Emigrants, The Good Women, and a Nouvelette.

Vol. V.—Wilhelm Meister's Apprenticeship.

Vol. VI.—Conversations with Eckerman and Soret.

Vol. VII.—Poems and Ballads in the original Metres, including Hermann and Dorothea.

Vol. VIII.—Götz von Berlichingen, Torquato Tasso, Egmont, Iphigenia, Clavigo, Wayward Lover, and Fellow Culprits.

Vol. IX.—Wilhelm Meister's Travels. Complete Edition.

Vol. X.—Tour in Italy. Two Parts. And Second Residence in Rome.

Vol. XI.—Miscellaneous Travels, Letters from Switzerland, Campaign in France, Siege of Mainz, and Rhine Tour.

Vol. XII.—Early and Miscellaneous Letters, including Letters to his Mother, with Biography and Notes. Edited by Edw. Bell, M.A.

—— Correspondence with Schiller. 2 vols.—*See Schiller.*

GOLDSMITH'S Works. 5 vols. *N. S.*

Vol. I.—Life, Vicar of Wakefield, Essays, and Letters.

Vol. II.—Poems, Plays, Bee, Cock Lane Ghost.

[Vols. III. and IV. *in the press.*

GREENE, MARLOW, and BEN JONSON (Poems of). With Notes and Memoirs by R. Bell. *N. S.*

GREGORY'S (Dr.) The Evidences, Doctrines, and Duties of the Christian Religion.

GRIMM'S Household Tales. With the Original Notes. Trans. by Mrs. A. Hunt. Introduction by Andrew Lang, M.A. 2 vols. *N. S.*

GUIZOT'S History of Representative Government in Europe. Trans. by A. R. Scoble.

—— English Revolution of 1640. From the Accession of Charles I. to his Death. Trans. by W. Hazlitt. Portrait.

—— History of Civilisation. From the Roman Empire to the French Revolution. Trans. by W. Hazlitt. Portraits. 3 vols.

HALL'S (Rev. Robert) Works and Remains. Memoir by Dr. Gregory and Essay by J. Foster. Portrait.

HAWTHORNE'S Tales. 3 vols. *N. S.*

Vol. I.—Twice-told Tales, and the Snow Image.

Vol. II.—Scarlet Letter, and the House with Seven Gables.

Vol. III.—Transformation, and Blithedale Romance.

HAZLITT'S (W.) Works. 6 vols. *N. S.*

—— Table-Talk.

—— The Literature of the Age of Elizabeth and Characters of Shakespeare's Plays. *N. S.*

—— English Poets and English Comic Writers. *N. S.*

HAZLITT'S (W.) Works.—*Continued.*

—— The Plain Speaker. Opinions on Books, Men, and Things. *N. S.*

—— Round Table. Conversations of James Northcote, R.A.; Characteristics. *N. S.*

—— Sketches and Essays, and Winterslow. *N. S.*

HEINE'S Poems. Translated in the original Metres, with Life by E. A. Bowring, C.B. 5*s.* *N. S.*

HUNGARY: its History and Revolution, with Memoir of Kossuth. Portrait.

HUTCHINSON (Colonel). Memoirs of. By his Widow, with her Autobiography, and the Siege of Lathom House. Portrait. *N. S.*

IRVING'S (Washington) Complete Works. 15 vols. *N. S.*

—— Life and Letters. By his Nephew, Pierre E. Irving. With Index and a Portrait. 2 vols. *N. S.*

JAMES'S (G. P. R.) Life of Richard Cœur de Lion. Portraits of Richard and Philip Augustus. 2 vols.

—— Louis XIV. Portraits. 2 vols.

JAMESON (Mrs.) Shakespeare's Heroines. Characteristics of Women. By Mrs. Jameson. *N. S.*

JEAN PAUL.—*See Richter.*

JONSON (Ben). Poems of.—*See Greene.*

JUNIUS'S Letters. With Woodfall's Notes. An Essay on the Authorship. Facsimiles of Handwriting. 2 vols. *N. S.*

LA FONTAINE'S Fables. In English Verse, with Essay on the Fabulists. By Elizur Wright. *N. S.*

LAMARTINE'S The Girondists, or Personal Memoirs of the Patriots of the French Revolution. Trans. by H. T. Ryde. Portraits of Robespierre, Madame Roland, and Charlotte Corday. 3 vols.

—— The Restoration of Monarchy in France (a Sequel to The Girondists). 5 Portraits. 4 vols.

—— The French Revolution of 1848. 6 Portraits.

LAMB'S (Charles) Elia and Eliana. Complete Edition. Portrait. *N. S.*

—— Specimens of English Dramatic Poets of the time of Elizabeth. Notes, with the Extracts from the Garrick Plays. *N. S.*

LAPPENBERG'S England under the Anglo-Saxon Kings. Trans. by B. Thorpe, F.S.A. 2 vols. *N. S.*

LANZI'S History of Painting in Italy, from the Period of the Revival of the Fine Arts to the End of the 18th Century. With Memoir of the Author. Portraits of Raffaelle, Titian, and Correggio, after the Artists themselves. Trans. by T. Roscoe. 3 vols.

LESSING'S Dramatic Works. Complete. By E. Bell, M.A. With Memoir by H. Zimmern. Portrait. 2 vols. *N. S.*

—— **Laokoon, Dramatic Notes, and** Representation of Death by the Ancients. Frontispiece. *N. S.*

LOCKE'S Philosophical Works, containing Human Understanding, with Bishop of Worcester, Malebranche's Opinions, Natural Philosophy, Reading and Study. With Preliminary Discourse, Analysis, and Notes, by J. A. St. John. Portrait. 2 vols. *N. S.*

—— **Life and Letters,** with Extracts from his Common-place Books. By Lord King.

LOCKHART (J. G.)—*See Burns.*

LONSDALE (Lord).—*See Carrel.*

LUTHER'S Table-Talk. Trans. by W. Hazlitt. With Life by A. Chalmers, and LUTHER'S CATECHISM. Portrait after Cranach. *N. S.*

—— **Autobiography.**—*See Michelet.*

MACHIAVELLI'S History of Florence, THE PRINCE, Savonarola, Historical Tracts, and Memoir. Portrait. *N. S.*

MARLOWE. Poems of.—*See Greene.*

MARTINEAU'S (Harriet) History of England (including History of the Peace) from 1800-1846. 5 vols. *N. S.*

MENZEL'S History of Germany, from the Earliest Period to the Crimean War. 3 Portraits. 3 vols.

MICHELET'S Autobiography of Luther. Trans. by W. Hazlitt. With Notes. *N. S.*

—— **The French Revolution** to the Flight of the King in 1791. *N. S.*

MIGNET'S The French Revolution, from 1789 to 1814. Portrait of Napoleon. *N. S.*

MILTON'S Prose Works. With Preface, Preliminary Remarks by J. A. St. John, and Index. 5 vols.

MITFORD'S (Miss) Our Village. Sketches of Rural Character and Scenery. 2 Engravings. 2 vols. *N. S.*

MOLIÈRE'S Dramatic Works. In English Prose, by C. H. Wall. With a Life and a Portrait. 3 vols. *N. S.*

'It is not too much to say that we have here probably as good a translation of Molière as can be given.'—*Academy.*

MONTESQUIEU'S Spirit of Laws. Revised Edition, with D'Alembert's Analysis, Notes, and Memoir. 2 vols. *N. S.*

NEANDER (Dr. A.) History of the Christian Religion and Church. Trans. by J. Torrey. With Short Memoir. 10 vols.

—— **Life of Jesus Christ, in its His**torical Connexion and Development. *N. S.*

—— **The Planting and Training of** the Christian Church by the Apostles. With the Antignosticus, or Spirit of Tertullian. Trans. by J. E. Ryland. 2 vols.

—— **Lectures on the History of** Christian Dogmas. Trans. by J. E. Ryland. 2 vols.

—— **Memorials of Christian Life in** the Early and Middle Ages; including Light in Dark Places. Trans. by J. E. Ryland.

OCKLEY (S.) History of the Saracens and their Conquests in Syria, Persia, and Egypt. Comprising the Lives of Mohammed and his Successors to the Death of Abdalmelik, the Eleventh Caliph. By Simon Ockley, B.D., Prof. of Arabic in Univ. of Cambridge. Portrait of Mohammed.

PERCY'S Reliques of Ancient English Poetry, consisting of Ballads, Songs, and other Pieces of our earlier Poets, with some few of later date. With Essay on Ancient Minstrels, and Glossary. 2 vols. *N. S.*

PHILIP DE COMMINES. Memoirs of. Containing the Histories of Louis XI. and Charles VIII., and Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy. With the History of Louis XI., by J. de Troyes. With a Life and Notes by A. R. Scoble. Portraits. 2 vols.

PLUTARCH'S LIVES. Newly Translated, with Notes and Life, by A. Stewart, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and G. Long, M.A. 4 vols. *N. S.*

POETRY OF AMERICA. Selections from One Hundred Poets, from 1776 to 1876. With Introductory Review, and Specimens of Negro Melody, by W. J. Linton. Portrait of W. Whitman. *N. S.*

RANKE (L.) History of the Popes, their Church and State, and their Conflicts with Protestantism in the 16th and 17th Centuries. Trans. by E. Foster. Portraits of Julius II. (after Raphael), Innocent X. (after Velasquez), and Clement VII. (after Titian). 3 vols. *N. S.*

—— **History of Servia.** Trans. by Mrs. Kerr. To which is added, The Slave Provinces of Turkey, by Cyprien Robert. *N. S.*

REUMONT (Alfred de).—*See Carafas.*

REYNOLDS' (Sir J.) Literary Works. With Memoir and Remarks by H. W. Beechy. 2 vols. *N. S.*

RICHTER (Jean Paul). Levana, a Treatise on Education; together with the Autobiography, and a short Memoir. *N.S.*

—— **Flower, Fruit, and Thorn Pieces,** or the Wedded Life, Death, and Marriage of Siebenkaes. Translated by Alex. Ewing. *N. S.*

The only complete English translation.

ROSCOE'S (W.) Life of Leo X., with Notes, Historical Documents, and Dissertation on Lucretia Borgia. 3 Portraits. 2 vols.

—— **Lorenzo de' Medici,** called 'The Magnificent,' with Copyright Notes, Poems, Letters, &c. With Memoir of Roscoe and Portrait of Lorenzo.

RUSSIA, History of, from the earliest Period to the Crimean War. By W. K. Kelly. 3 Portraits. 2 vols.

SCHILLER'S Works. 6 vols. *N. S.*

Vol. I.—Thirty Years' War—Revolt in the Netherlands. Rev. A. J. W. Morrison, M.A. Portrait.

Vol. II.—Revolt in the Netherlands, *completed*—Wallenstein. By J. Churchill and S. T. Coleridge.—William Tell. Sir Theodore Martin. Engraving (after Vandyck).

Vol. III.—Don Carlos. R. D. Boylan—Mary Stuart. Mellish—Maid of Orleans. Anna Swanwick—Bride of Messina. A. Lodge, M.A. Together with the Use of the Chorus in Tragedy (a short Essay). Engravings.

These Dramas are all translated in metre.

Vol. IV.—Robbers—Fiesco—Love and Intrigue—Demetrius—Ghost Seer—Sport of Divinity.

The Dramas in this volume are in prose.

Vol. V.—Poems. E. A. Bowring, C.B.

Vol. VI.—Essays, Æsthetical and Philosophical, including the Dissertation on the Connexion between the Animal and Spiritual in Man.

SCHILLER and GOETHE. Correspondence between, from A.D. 1794-1805. With Short Notes by L. Dora Schmitz. 2 vols. *N. S.*

SCHLEGEL'S (F.) Lectures on the Philosophy of Life and the Philosophy of Language. By A. J. W. Morrison.

—— **The History of Literature,** Ancient and Modern.

—— **The Philosophy of History.** With Memoir and Portrait.

SCHLEGEL'S Works.—*Continued.*

—— **Modern History,** with the Lectures entitled Cæsar and Alexander, and The Beginning of our History. By L. Purcell and R. H. Whitelock.

—— **Æsthetic and Miscellaneous** Works, containing Letters on Christian Art, Essay on Gothic Architecture, Remarks on the Romance Poetry of the Middle Ages, on Shakspeare, the Limits of the Beautiful, and on the Language and Wisdom of the Indians. By E. J. Millington.

SCHLEGEL (A. W.) Dramatic Art and Literature. By J. Black. With Memoir by A. J. W. Morrison. Portrait.

SHAKESPEARE'S Dramatic Art. The History and Character of Shakspeare's Plays. By Dr. H. Ulrici. Trans. by L. Dora Schmitz. 2 vols. *N. S.*

SHERIDAN'S Dramatic Works. With Memoir. Portrait (after Reynolds). *N. S.*

SKEAT (Rev. W. W.)—*See Chaucer.*

SISMONDI'S History of the Literature of the South of Europe. With Notes and Memoir by T. Roscoe. Portraits of Sismondi and Dante. 2 vols.

The specimens of early French, Italian, Spanish, and Portugese Poetry, in English Verse, by Cary and others.

SMITH'S (Adam) Theory of Moral Sentiments; with Essay on the First Formation of Languages, and Critical Memoir by Dugald Stewart.

SMYTH'S (Professor) Lectures on Modern History; from the Irruption of the Northern Nations to the close of the American Revolution. 2 vols.

—— **Lectures on the French Revolution.** With Index. 2 vols.

SOUTHEY.—*See Cowper, Wesley, and (Illustrated Library) Nelson.*

STURM'S Morning Communings with God, or Devotional Meditations for Every Day. Trans. by W. Johnstone, M.A.

SULLY. Memoirs of the Duke of, Prime Minister to Henry the Great. With Notes and Historical Introduction. 4 Portraits. 4 vols.

TAYLOR'S (Bishop Jeremy) Holy Living and Dying, with Prayers, containing the Whole Duty of a Christian and the parts of Devotion fitted to all Occasions. Portrait. *N. S.*

THIERRY'S Conquest of England by the Normans; its Causes, and its Consequences in England and the Continent. By W. Hazlitt. With short Memoir. 2 Portraits. 2 vols. *N. S.*

TROYE'S (Jean de).—*See Philip de Commines.*

ULRICI (Dr.)—*See Shakespeare.*

VASARI. Lives of the most Eminent Painters, Sculptors, and Architects. By Mrs. J. Foster, with selected Notes. Portrait. 6 vols., Vol. VI. being an additional Volume of Notes by J. P. Richter. *N. S.*

WESLEY, the Life of, and the Rise and Progress of Methodism. By Robert Southey. Portrait. 5*s.* *N. S.*

WHEATLEY. A Rational Illustration of the Book of Common Prayer, being the Substance of everything Liturgical in all former Ritualist Commentators upon the subject. Frontispiece. *N. S.*

HISTORICAL LIBRARY.

21 *Volumes at* 5*s. each.* (5*l.* 5*s. per set.*)

EVELYN'S Diary and Correspond- dence, with the Private Correspondence of Charles I. and Sir Edward Nicholas, and between Sir Edward Hyde (Earl of Clarendon) and Sir Richard Browne. Edited from the Original MSS. by W. Bray, F.A.S. 4 vols. *N. S.* 45 Engravings (after Vandyke, Lely, Kneller, and Jamieson, &c.).

N.B.—This edition contains 130 letters from Evelyn and his wife, contained in no other edition.

PEPYS' Diary and Correspondence. With Life and Notes, by Lord Braybrooke. 4 vols. *N. S.* With Appendix containing additional Letters, an Index, and 31 Engravings (after Vandyke, Sir P. Lely, Holbein, Kneller, &c.).

JESSE'S Memoirs of the Court of England under the Stuarts, including the Protectorate. 3 vols. With Index and 42 Portraits (after Vandyke, Lely, &c.).

—— **Memoirs of the Pretenders and** their Adherents. 7 Portraits.

NUGENT'S (Lord) Memorials of Hampden, his Party and Times. With Memoir. 12 Portraits (after Vandyke and others). *N. S.*

STRICKLAND'S (Agnes) Lives of the Queens of England from the Norman Conquest. From authentic Documents, public and private. 6 Portraits. 6 vols. *N. S.*

—— **Life of Mary Queen of Scots.** 2 Portraits. 2 vols. *N. S.*

PHILOSOPHICAL LIBRARY.

15 *Vols. at* 5*s. each, excepting those marked otherwise.* (3*l.* 9*s.* 0*d. per set.*)

BACON'S Novum Organum and Ad- vancement of Learning. With Notes by J. Devey, M.A.

COMTE'S Philosophy of the Sciences. An Exposition of the Principles of the *Cours de Philosophie Positive.* By G. H. Lewes, Author of 'The Life of Goethe.'

DRAPER (Dr. J. W.) A History of the Intellectual Development of Europe. 2 vols. *N. S.*

HEGEL'S Philosophy of History. By J. Sibree, M.A.

KANT'S Critique of Pure Reason. By J. M. D. Meiklejohn. *N. S.*

—— **Prolegomena and Metaphysical** Foundations of Natural Science, with Biography and Memoir by E. Belfort Bax. Portrait. *N. S.*

LOGIC, or the Science of Inference. A Popular Manual. By J. Devey.

MILLER (Professor). History Philo. sophically Illustrated, from the Fall of the Roman Empire to the French Revolution. With Memoir. 4 vols. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

SPINOZA'S Chief Works. Trans. with Introduction by R. H. M. Elwes. 2 vols. *N.S.*

Vol. I.—Tractatus Theologico-Politicus —Political Treatise.

Vol. II.—Improvement of the Understanding—Ethics—Letters.

TENNEMANN'S Manual of the His- tory of Philosophy. Trans. by Rev. A. Johnson, M.A.

THEOLOGICAL LIBRARY.

15 *Vols. at* 5*s. each, excepting those marked otherwise.* (3*l.* 13*s.* 6*d. per set.*)

BLEEK. Introduction to the Old Testament. By Friedrich Bleek. Trans. under the supervision of Rev. E. Venables, Residentiary Canon of Lincoln. 2 vols. *N. S.*

CHILLINGWORTH'S Religion of Protestants. 3*s.* 6*d.*

EUSEBIUS. Ecclesiastical History of Eusebius Pamphilius, Bishop of Cæsarea. Trans. by Rev. C. F. Cruse, M.A. With Notes, Life, and Chronological Tables.

EVAGRIUS. History of the Church. —*See Theodoret.*

HARDWICK. History of the Articles of Religion; to which is added a Series of Documents from A.D. 1536 to A.D. 1615. Ed. by Rev. F. Proctor. *N. S.*

HENRY'S (Matthew) Exposition of the Book of Psalms. Numerous Woodcuts.

PEARSON (John, D.D.) Exposition of the Creed. Edit. by E. Walford, M.A. With Notes, Analysis, and Indexes. *N. S.*

PHILO-JUDÆUS, Works of. The Contemporary of Josephus. Trans. by C. D. Yonge. 4 vols.

PHILOSTORGIUS. Ecclesiastical History of.—*See Sozomen.*

SOCRATES' Ecclesiastical History. Comprising a History of the Church from Constantine, A.D. 305, to the 38th year of Theodosius II. With Short Account of the Author, and selected Notes.

SOZOMEN'S Ecclesiastical History. A.D. 324-440. With Notes, Prefatory Remarks by Valesius, and Short Memoir. Together with the ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY OF PHILOSTORGIUS, as epitomised by Photius. Trans. by Rev. E. Walford, M.A. With Notes and brief Life.

THEODORET and EVAGRIUS. Histories of the Church from A.D. 332 to the Death of Theodore of Mopsuestia, A.D. 427; and from A.D. 431 to A.D. 544. With Memoirs.

WIESELER'S (Karl) Chronological Synopsis of the Four Gospels. Trans. by Rev. Canon Venables. *N. S.*

ANTIQUARIAN LIBRARY.

35 *Vols. at* 5*s. each.* (8*l.* 15*s. per set.*)

ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE. — *See Bede.*

ASSER'S Life of Alfred.—*See Six O. E. Chronicles.*

BEDE'S (Venerable) Ecclesiastical History of England. Together with the ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE. With Notes, Short Life, Analysis, and Map. Edit. by J. A. Giles, D.C.L.

BOETHIUS'S Consolation of Philo-sophy. King Alfred's Anglo-Saxon Version of. With an English Translation on opposite pages, Notes, Introduction, and Glossary, by Rev. S. Fox, M.A. To which is added the Anglo-Saxon Version of the METRES OF BOETHIUS, with a free Translation by Martin F. Tupper, D.C.L.

BRAND'S Popular Antiquities of England, Scotland, and Ireland. Illustrating the Origin of our Vulgar and Provincial Customs, Ceremonies, and Superstitions. By Sir Henry Ellis, K.H., F.R.S. Frontispiece. 3 vols.

CHRONICLES of the CRUSADES. Contemporary Narratives of Richard Cœur de Lion, by Richard of Devizes and Geoffrey de Vinsauf; and of the Crusade at Saint Louis, by Lord John de Joinville. With Short Notes. Illuminated Frontispiece from an old MS.

DYER'S (T. F. T.) British Popular Customs, Present and Past. An Account of the various Games and Customs associated with different Days of the Year in the British Isles, arranged according to the Calendar. By the Rev. T. F. Thiselton Dyer, M.A.

EARLY TRAVELS IN PALESTINE. Comprising the Narratives of Arculf, Willibald, Bernard, Sæwulf, Sigurd, Benjamin of Tudela, Sir John Maundeville, De la Brocquière, and Maundrell; all unabridged. With Introduction and Notes by Thomas Wright. Map of Jerusalem.

ELLIS (G.) Specimens of Early English Metrical Romances, relating to Arthur, Merlin, Guy of Warwick, Richard Cœur de Lion, Charlemagne, Roland, &c. &c. With Historical Introduction by J. O. Halliwell, F.R.S. Illuminated Frontispiece from an old MS.

ETHELWERD. Chronicle of.—*See Six O. E. Chronicles.*

FLORENCE OF WORCESTER'S Chronicle, with the Two Continuations: comprising Annals of English History from the Departure of the Romans to the Reign of Edward I. Trans., with Notes, by Thomas Forester, M.A.

GESTA ROMANORUM, or Entertaining Moral Stories invented by the Monks. Trans. with Notes by the Rev. Charles Swan. Edit. by W. Hooper, M.A.

GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS' Historical Works. Containing Topography of Ireland, and History of the Conquest of Ireland, by Th. Forester, M A. Itinerary through Wales, and Description of Wales, by Sir R. Colt Hoare.

GEOFFREY OF MONMOUTH. Chronicle of.—*See Six O. E. Chronicles.*

GILDAS. Chronicle of.—*See Six O. E. Chronicles.*

HENRY OF HUNTINGDON'S History of the English, from the Roman Invasion to the Accession of Henry II.; with the Acts of King Stephen, and the Letter to Walter. By T. Forester, M.A. Frontispiece from an old MS.

INGULPH'S Chronicles of the Abbey of Croyland, with the CONTINUATION by Peter of Blois and others. Trans. with Notes by H. T. Riley, B.A.

KEIGHTLEY'S (Thomas) Fairy Mythology, illustrative of the Romance and Superstition of Various Countries. Frontispiece by Cruikshank. *N. S.*

LEPSIUS'S Letters from Egypt, Ethiopia, and the Peninsula of Sinai; to which are added, Extracts from his Chronology of the Egyptians, with reference to the Exodus of the Israelites. By L. and J. B. Horner. Maps and Coloured View of Mount Barkal.

MALLET'S Northern Antiquities, or an Historical Account of the Manners, Customs, Religions, and Literature of the Ancient Scandinavians. Trans. by Bishop Percy. With Translation of the PROSE EDDA, and Notes by J. A. Blackwell. Also an Abstract of the 'Eyrbyggia Saga' by Sir Walter Scott. With Glossary and Coloured Frontispiece.

MARCO POLO'S Travels; with Notes and Introduction. Edit. by T. Wright.

MATTHEW PARIS'S English History, from 1235 to 1273. By Rev. J. A. Giles, D.C.L. With Frontispiece. 3 vols.—*See also Roger of Wendover.*

MATTHEW OF WESTMINSTER'S Flowers of History, especially such as relate to the affairs of Britain, from the beginning of the World to A.D. 1307. By C. D. Yonge. 2 vols.

NENNIUS. Chronicle of.—*See Six O. E. Chronicles.*

ORDERICUS VITALIS' Ecclesiastical History of England and Normandy. With Notes, Introduction of Guizot, and the Critical Notice of M. Delille, by T. Forester, M.A. To which is added the CHRONICLE OF ST. EVROULT. With General and Chronological Indexes. 4 vols.

PAULI'S (Dr. R.) Life of Alfred the Great. To which is appended Alfred's ANGLO-SAXON VERSION OF OROSIUS. With literal Translation interpaged, Notes, and an ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR and Glossary, by B. Thorpe, Esq. Frontispiece.

RICHARD OF CIRENCESTER. Chronicle of.—*See Six O. E. Chronicles.*

ROGER DE HOVEDEN'S Annals of English History, comprising the History of England and of other Countries of Europe from A.D. 732 to A.D. 1201. With Notes by H. T. Riley, B.A. 2 vols.

ROGER OF WENDOVER'S Flowers of History, comprising the History of England from the Descent of the Saxons to A.D. 1235, formerly ascribed to Matthew Paris. With Notes and Index by J. A. Giles, D.C.L. 2 vols.

SIX OLD ENGLISH CHRONICLES: viz., Asser's Life of Alfred and the Chronicles of Ethelwerd, Gildas, Nennius, Geoffrey of Monmouth, and Richard of Cirencester. Edit., with Notes, by J. A. Giles, D.C.L. Portrait of Alfred.

WILLIAM OF MALMESBURY'S Chronicle of the Kings of England, from the Earliest Period to King Stephen. By Rev. J. Sharpe. With Notes by J. A. Giles, D.C.L. Frontispiece.

YULE-TIDE STORIES. A Collection of Scandinavian and North-German Popular Tales and Traditions, from the Swedish, Danish, and German. Edit. by B. Thorpe.

ILLUSTRATED LIBRARY.

85 *Vols. at* 5*s. each, excepting those marked otherwise.* (23*l.* 2*s.* 6*d. per set.*)

ALLEN'S (Joseph, R.N.) Battles of the British Navy. Revised edition, with Indexes of Names and Events, and 57 Portraits and Plans. 2 vols.

ANDERSEN'S Danish Fairy Tales. By Caroline Peachey. With Short Life and 120 Wood Engravings.

ARIOSTO'S Orlando Furioso. In English Verse by W. S. Rose. With Notes and Short Memoir. Portrait after Titian, and 24 Steel Engravings. 2 vols.

BECHSTEIN'S Cage and Chamber Birds: their Natural History, Habits, &c. Together with SWEET'S BRITISH WARBLERS. 43 Plates and Woodcuts. *N. S.*

—— or with the Plates Coloured, 7*s.* 6*d.*

BONOMI'S Nineveh and its Palaces. The Discoveries of Botta and Layard applied to the Elucidation of Holy Writ. 7 Plates and 294 Woodcuts. *N. S.*

BUTLER'S Hudibras, with Variorum Notes and Biography. Portrait and 28 Illustrations.

CATTERMOLE'S Evenings at Haddon Hall. Romantic Tales of the Olden Times. With 24 Steel Engravings after Cattermole.

CHINA, Pictorial, Descriptive, and Historical, with some account of Ava and the Burmese, Siam, and Anam. Map, and nearly 100 Illustrations.

CRAIK'S (G. L.) Pursuit of Knowledge under Difficulties. Illustrated by Anecdotes and Memoirs. Numerous Woodcut Portraits. *N. S.*

CRUIKSHANK'S Three Courses and a Dessert; comprising three Sets of Tales, West Country, Irish, and Legal; and a Mélange. With 50 Illustrations by Cruikshank. *N. S.*

—— **Punch and Judy.** The Dialogue of the Puppet Show; an Account of its Origin, &c. 24 Illustrations by Cruikshank. *N. S.*

—— With Coloured Plates. 7*s.* 6*d.*

DANTE, in English Verse, by I. C. Wright, M.A. With Introduction and Memoir. Portrait and 34 Steel Engravings after Flaxman. *N. S.*

DIDRON'S Christian Iconography; a History of Christian Art in the Middle Ages. Trans. by E. J. Millington. 150 Outline Engravings.

DYER (Dr. T. H.) Pompeii: its Buildings and Antiquities. An Account of the City, with full Description of the Remains and Recent Excavations, and an Itinerary for Visitors. By T. H. Dyer, LL.D. Nearly 300 Wood Engravings, Map, and Plan. 7*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

—— **Rome:** History of the City, with Introduction on recent Excavations. 8 Engravings, Frontispiece, and 2 Maps.

GIL BLAS. The Adventures of. From the French of Lesage by Smollett. 24 Engravings after Smirke, and 10 Etchings by Cruikshank. 612 pages. 6*s.*

GRIMM'S Gammer Grethel; or, German Fairy Tales and Popular Stories, containing 42 Fairy Tales. By Edgar Taylor. Numerous Woodcuts after Cruikshank and Ludwig Grimm. 3*s.* 6*d.*

HOLBEIN'S Dance of Death and Bible Cuts. Upwards of 150 Subjects, engraved in facsimile, with Introduction and Descriptions by the late Francis Douce and Dr. Dibdin. 7*s.* 6*d.*

HOWITT'S (Mary) Pictorial Calendar of the Seasons; embodying AIKIN'S CALENDAR OF NATURE. Upwards of 100 Woodcuts.

INDIA, Pictorial, Descriptive, and Historical, from the Earliest Times. 100 Engravings on Wood and Map.

JESSE'S Anecdotes of Dogs. With 40 Woodcuts after Harvey, Bewick, and others. *N. S.*

—— With 34 additional Steel Engravings after Cooper, Landseer, &c. 7*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

KING'S (C. W.) Natural History of Gems or Decorative Stones. Illustrations. 6*s.*

—— **Natural History of Precious** Stones and Metals. Illustrations. 6*s.*

—— **Handbook of Engraved Gems.** Numerous Illustrations. 6*s.*

KITTO'S Scripture Lands. Described in a series of Historical, Geographical, and Topographical Sketches. 42 Maps.

—— With the Maps coloured, 7*s.* 6*d.*

KRUMMACHER'S Parables. 40 Illustrations.

LINDSAY'S (Lord) Letters on Egypt, Edom, and the Holy Land. 36 Wood Engravings and 2 Maps.

LODGE'S Portraits of Illustrious Personages of Great Britain, with Biographical and Historical Memoirs. 240 Portraits engraved on Steel, with the respective Biographies unabridged. Complete in 8 vols.

LONGFELLOW'S Poetical Works, including his Translations and Notes. 24 full-page Woodcuts by Birket Foster and others, and a Portrait. *N. S.*

—— Without the Illustrations, 3*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

—— **Prose Works.** With 16 full-page Woodcuts by Birket Foster and others.

LOUDON'S (Mrs.) Entertaining Naturalist. Popular Descriptions, Tales, and Anecdotes, of more than 500 Animals. Numerous Woodcuts. *N. S.*

MARRYAT'S (Capt., R.N.) Masterman Ready; or, the Wreck of the *Pacific.* (Written for Young People.) With 93 Woodcuts. 3*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

—— **Mission; or, Scenes in Africa.** (Written for Young People.) Illustrated by Gilbert and Dalziel. 3*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

—— **Pirate and Three Cutters.** (Written for Young People.) With a Memoir. 8 Steel Engravings after Clarkson Stanfield, R.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

—— **Privateersman.** Adventures by Sea and Land One Hundred Years Ago. (Written for Young People.) 8 Steel Engravings. 3*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

—— **Settlers in Canada.** (Written for Young People.) 10 Engravings by Gilbert and Dalziel. 3*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

—— **Poor Jack.** (Written for Young People.) With 16 Illustrations after Clarkson Stanfield, R.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

MAXWELL'S Victories of Wellington and the British Armies. Frontispiece and 4 Portraits.

MICHAEL ANGELO and RAPHAEL, Their Lives and Works. By Duppa and Quatremère de Quincy. Portraits and Engravings, including the Last Judgment, and Cartoons. *N. S.*

MILLER'S History of the Anglo-Saxons, from the Earliest Period to the Norman Conquest. Portrait of Alfred, Map of Saxon Britain, and 12 Steel Engravings.

MILTON'S Poetical Works, with a Memoir and Notes by J. Montgomery, an Index to Paradise Lost, Todd's Verbal Index to all the Poems, and Notes. 120 Wood Engravings. 2 vols. *N. S.*

MUDIE'S History of British Birds. Revised by W. C. L. Martin. 52 Figures of Birds and 7 Plates of Eggs. 2 vols. *N.S.*

—— With the Plates coloured, 7*s.* 6*d.* per vol.

NAVAL and MILITARY HEROES of Great Britain; a Record of British Valour on every Day in the year, from William the Conqueror to the Battle of Inkermann. By Major Johns, R.M., and Lieut. P. H. Nicolas, R.M. Indexes. 24 Portraits after Holbein, Reynolds, &c. 6*s.*

NICOLINI'S History of the Jesuits: their Origin, Progress, Doctrines, and Designs. 8 Portraits.

PETRARCH'S Sonnets, Triumphs, and other Poems, in English Verse. With Life by Thomas Campbell. Portrait and 15 Steel Engravings.

PICKERING'S History of the Races of Man, and their Geographical Distribution; with AN ANALYTICAL SYNOPSIS OF THE NATURAL HISTORY OF MAN. By Dr. Hall. Map of the World and 12 Plates.

—— With the Plates coloured, 7*s.* 6*d.*

PICTORIAL HANDBOOK OF Modern Geography on a Popular Plan. Compiled from the best Authorities, English and Foreign, by H. G. Bohn. 150 Woodcuts and 51 Maps. 6*s.*

—— With the Maps coloured, 7*s.* 6*d.*

—— Without the Maps, 3*s.* 6*d.*

POPE'S Poetical Works, including Translations. Edit., with Notes, by R. Carruthers. 2 vols.

—— **Homer's Iliad,** with Introduction and Notes by Rev. J. S. Watson, M.A. With Flaxman's Designs. *N. S.*

—— **Homer's Odyssey,** with the BATTLE OF FROGS AND MICE, Hymns, &c., by other translators, including Chapman. Introduction and Notes by J. S. Watson, M.A. With Flaxman's Designs. *N. S.*

—— **Life,** including many of his Letters. By R. Carruthers. Numerous Illustrations.

POTTERY AND PORCELAIN, and other objects of Vertu. Comprising an Illustrated Catalogue of the Bernal Collection, with the prices and names of the Possessors. Also an Introductory Lecture on Pottery and Porcelain, and an Engraved List of all Marks and Monograms. By H. G. Bohn. Numerous Woodcuts.

—— With coloured Illustrations, 10*s.* 6*d.*

PROUT'S (Father) Reliques. Edited by Rev. F. Mahony. Copyright edition, with the Author's last corrections and additions. 21 Etchings by D. Maclise, R.A. Nearly 600 pages. 5*s.* *N. S.*

RECREATIONS IN SHOOTING. With some Account of the Game found in the British Isles, and Directions for the Management of Dog and Gun. By 'Craven.' 62 Woodcuts and 9 Steel Engravings after A. Cooper, R.A.

REDDING'S History and Descriptions of Wines, Ancient and Modern. 20 Woodcuts.

RENNIE. Insect Architecture. Revised by Rev. J. G. Wood, M.A. 186 Woodcuts. *N. S.*

ROBINSON CRUSOE. With Memoir of Defoe, 12 Steel Engravings and 74 Woodcuts after Stothard and Harvey.

—— Without the Engravings, 3*s.* 6*d.*

ROME IN THE NINETEENTH CENtury. An Account in 1817 of the Ruins of the Ancient City, and Monuments of Modern Times. By C. A. Eaton. 34 Steel Engravings. 2 vols.

SHARPE (S.) The History of Egypt, from the Earliest Times till the Conquest by the Arabs, A.D. 640. 2 Maps and upwards of 400 Woodcuts. 2 vols. *N. S.*

SOUTHEY'S Life of Nelson. With Additional Notes, Facsimiles of Nelson's Writing, Portraits, Plans, and 50 Engravings, after Birket Foster, &c. *N. S.*

STARLING'S (Miss) Noble Deeds of Women; or, Examples of Female Courage, Fortitude, and Virtue. With 14 Steel Portraits. *N. S.*

STUART and REVETT'S Antiquities of Athens, and other Monuments of Greece; with Glossary of Terms used in Grecian Architecture. 71 Steel Plates and numerous Woodcuts.

SWEET'S British Warblers. 5*s.*—*See Bechstein.*

TALES OF THE GENII; or, the Delightful Lessons of Horam, the Son of Asmar. Trans. by Sir C. Morrell. Numerous Woodcuts.

TASSO'S Jerusalem Delivered. In English Spenserian Verse, with Life, by J. H. Wiffen. With 8 Engravings and 24 Woodcuts. *N. S.*

WALKER'S Manly Exercises; containing Skating, Riding, Driving, Hunting, Shooting, Sailing, Rowing, Swimming, &c. 44 Engravings and numerous Woodcuts.

WALTON'S Complete Angler, or the Contemplative Man's Recreation, by Izaak Walton and Charles Cotton. With Memoirs and Notes by E. Jesse. Also an Account of Fishing Stations, Tackle, &c., by H. G. Bohn. Portrait and 203 Woodcuts. *N. S.*

—— With 26 additional Engravings on Steel, 7*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Lives of Donne, Wotton, Hooker,** &c., with Notes. A New Edition, revised by A. H. Bullen, with a Memoir of Izaak Walton by William Dowling. 6 Portraits, 6 Autograph Signatures, &c. *N.S.*

WELLINGTON, Life of. From the Materials of Maxwell. 18 Steel Engravings.

—— **Victories of.**—*See Maxwell.*

WESTROPP (H. M.) A Handbook of Archæology, Egyptian, Greek, Etruscan, Roman. By H. M. Westropp. Numerous Illustrations. 7*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

WHITE'S Natural History of Selborne, with Observations on various Parts of Nature, and the Naturalists' Calendar. Sir W. Jardine. Edit., with Notes and Memoir, by E. Jesse. 40 Portraits. *N. S.*

—— With the Plates coloured, 7*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

YOUNG LADY'S BOOK, The. A Manual of Recreations, Arts, Sciences, and Accomplishments. 1200 Woodcut Illustrations. 7*s.* 6*d.*

—— cloth gilt, gilt edges, 9*s.*

CLASSICAL LIBRARY.

TRANSLATIONS FROM THE GREEK AND LATIN.

95 *Vols. at* 5*s. each, excepting those marked otherwise.* (23*l.* 7*s. per set.*)

ÆSCHYLUS, The Dramas of. In English Verse by Anna Swanwick. 3rd edition. *N. S.*

—— **The Tragedies of.** In Prose, with Notes and Introduction, by T. A. Buckley, B.A. Portrait. 3*s.* 6*d.*

AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS. History of Rome during the Reigns of Constantius, Julian, Jovianus, Valentinian, and Valens, by C. D. Yonge, B.A. Double volume. 7*s.* 6*d.*

ANTONINUS (M. Aurelius), The Thoughts of. Translated literally, with Notes, Biographical Sketch, and Essay on the Philosophy, by George Long, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

APULEIUS, The Works of. Comprising the Golden Ass, God of Socrates, Florida, and Discourse of Magic. With a Metrical Version of Cupid and Psyche, and Mrs. Tighe's Psyche. Frontispiece.

ARISTOPHANES' Comedies. Trans., with Notes and Extracts from Frere's and other Metrical Versions, by W. J. Hickie. Portrait. 2 vols.

ARISTOTLE'S Nicomachean Ethics. Trans., with Notes, Analytical Introduction, and Questions for Students, by Ven. Archdn. Browne.

—— **Politics and Economics.** Trans., with Notes, Analyses, and Index, by E. Walford, M.A., and an Essay and Life by Dr. Gillies.

—— **Metaphysics.** Trans., with Notes, Analysis, and Examination Questions, by Rev. John H. M'Mahon, M.A.

—— **History of Animals.** In Ten Books. Trans., with Notes and Index, by R. Cresswell, M.A.

—— **Organon;** or, Logical Treatises, and the Introduction of Porphyry. With Notes, Analysis, and Introduction, by Rev. O. F. Owen, M.A. 2 vols. *3s. 6d.* each.

—— **Rhetoric and Poetics.** Trans., with Hobbes' Analysis, Exam. Questions, and Notes, by T. Buckley, B.A. Portrait.

ATHENÆUS. The Deipnosophists; or, the Banquet of the Learned. By C. D. Yonge, B.A. With an Appendix of Poetical Fragments. 3 vols.

ATLAS of Classical Geography. 22 large Coloured Maps. With a complete Index. Imp. 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

BION.—*See Theocritus.*

CÆSAR. Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars, with the Supplementary Books attributed to Hirtius, including the complete Alexandrian, African, and Spanish Wars. Trans. with Notes. Portrait.

CATULLUS, Tibullus, and the Vigil of Venus. Trans. with Notes and Biographical Introduction. To which are added, Metrical Versions by Lamb, Grainger, and others. Frontispiece.

CICERO'S Orations. Trans. by C. D. Yonge, B.A. 4 vols.

—— **On Oratory and Orators.** With Letters to Quintus and Brutus. Trans., with Notes, by Rev. J. S. Watson, M.A.

—— **On the Nature of the Gods,** Divination, Fate, Laws, a Republic, Consulship. Trans., with Notes, by C. D. Yonge, B.A.

—— **Academics,** De Finibus, and Tusculan Questions. By C. D. Yonge, B.A. With Sketch of the Greek Philosophers mentioned by Cicero.

CICERO'S Orations.—*Continued.*

—— **Offices;** or, Moral Duties. Cato Major, an Essay on Old Age; Lælius, an Essay on Friendship; Scipio's Dream; Paradoxes; Letter to Quintus on Magistrates. Trans., with Notes, by C. R. Edmonds. Portrait. *3s. 6d.*

DEMOSTHENES' Orations. Trans., with Notes, Arguments, a Chronological Abstract, and Appendices, by C. Rann Kennedy. 5 vols.

DICTIONARY of LATIN and GREEK Quotations; including Proverbs, Maxims, Mottoes, Law Terms and Phrases. With the Quantities marked, and English Translations.

—— With Index Verborum (622 pages). *6s.*

—— Index Verborum to the above, with the *Quantities* and Accents marked (56 pages), limp cloth. *1s.*

DIOGENES LAERTIUS. Lives and Opinions of the Ancient Philosophers. Trans., with Notes, by C. D. Yonge, B.A.

EPICTETUS. The Discourses of. With the Encheiridion and Fragments. With Notes, Life, and View of his Philosophy, by George Long, M.A. *N. S.*

EURIPIDES. Trans., with Notes and Introduction, by T. A. Buckley, B.A. Portrait. 2 vols.

GREEK ANTHOLOGY. In English Prose by G. Burges, M.A. With Metrical Versions by Bland, Merivale, Lord Denman, &c.

GREEK ROMANCES of Heliodorus, Longus, and Achilles Tatius; viz., The Adventures of Theagenes and Chariclea; Amours of Daphnis and Chloe; and Loves of Clitopho and Leucippe. Trans., with Notes, by Rev. R. Smith, M.A.

HERODOTUS. Literally trans. by Rev. Henry Cary, M.A. Portrait.

HESIOD, CALLIMACHUS, and Theognis. In Prose, with Notes and Biographical Notices by Rev. J. Banks, M.A. Together with the Metrical Versions of Hesiod, by Elton; Callimachus, by Tytler; and Theognis, by Frere.

HOMER'S Iliad. In English Prose, with Notes by T. A. Buckley, B.A. Portrait.

—— **Odyssey,** Hymns, Epigrams, and Battle of the Frogs and Mice. In English Prose, with Notes and Memoir by T. A. Buckley, B.A.

HORACE. In Prose by Smart, with Notes selected by T. A. Buckley, B.A. Portrait. *3s. 6d.*

JUSTIN, CORNELIUS NEPOS, and Eutropius. Trans., with Notes, by Rev. J. S. Watson, M.A.

JUVENAL, PERSIUS, SULPICIA, and Lucilius. In Prose, with Notes, Chronological Tables, Arguments, by L. Evans, M.A. To which is added the Metrical Version of Juvenal and Persius by Gifford. Frontispiece.

LIVY. The History of Rome. Trans. by Dr. Spillan and others. 4 vols. Portrait.

LUCAN'S Pharsalia. In Prose, with Notes by H. T. Riley.

LUCRETIUS. In Prose, with Notes and Biographical Introduction by Rev. J. S. Watson, M.A. To which is added the Metrical Version by J. M. Good.

MARTIAL'S Epigrams, complete. In Prose, with Verse Translations selected from English Poets, and other sources. Dble. vol. (670 pages). *7s. 6d.*

MOSCHUS.—*See Theocritus.*

OVID'S Works, complete. In Prose, with Notes and Introduction. 3 vols.

PHALARIS. Bentley's Dissertations upon the Epistles of Phalaris, Themistocles, Socrates, Euripides, and the Fables of Æsop. With Introduction and Notes by Prof. W. Wagner, Ph.D.

PINDAR. In Prose, with Introduction and Notes by Dawson W. Turner. Together with the Metrical Version by Abraham Moore. Portrait.

PLATO'S Works. Trans., with Introduction and Notes. 6 vols.

—— **Dialogues.** A Summary and Analysis of. With Analytical Index to the Greek text of modern editions and to the above translations, by A. Day, LL.D.

PLAUTUS'S Comedies. In Prose, with Notes and Index by H. T. Riley, B.A. 2 vols.

PLINY'S Natural History. Trans., with Notes, by J. Bostock, M.D., F.R.S., and H. T. Riley, B.A. 6 vols.

PLINY. The Letters of Pliny the Younger. Melmoth's Translation, revised, with Notes and short Life, by Rev. F. C. T. Bosanquet, M.A.

PLUTARCH'S Morals. Theosophical Essays. Trans. by C. W. King, M.A. *N. S.*

—— **Lives.** *See page 6.*

PROPERTIUS, The Elegies of. With Notes, Literally translated by the Rev. P. J. F. Gantillon, M.A., with metrical versions of Select Elegies by Nott and Elton. *3s. 6d.*

QUINTILIAN'S Institutes of Oratory. Trans., with Notes and Biographical Notice, by Rev. J. S. Watson, M.A. 2 vols.

SALLUST, FLORUS, and VELLEIUS Paterculus. Trans., with Notes and Biographical Notices, by J. S. Watson, M.A.

SENECA. [*Preparing.*

SOPHOCLES. The Tragedies of. In Prose, with Notes, Arguments, and Introduction. Portrait.

STRABO'S Geography. Trans., with Notes, by W. Falconer, M.A., and H. C. Hamilton. Copious Index, giving Ancient and Modern Names. 3 vols.

SUETONIUS' Lives of the Twelve Cæsars and Lives of the Grammarians. The Translation of Thomson, revised, with Notes, by T. Forester.

TACITUS. The Works of. Trans., with Notes. 2 vols.

TERENCE and PHÆDRUS. In English Prose, with Notes and Arguments, by H. T. Riley, B.A. To which is added Smart's Metrical Version of Phædrus. With Frontispiece.

THEOCRITUS, BION, MOSCHUS, and Tyrtæus. In Prose, with Notes and Arguments, by Rev. J. Banks, M.A. To which are appended the METRICAL VERSIONS of Chapman. Portrait of Theocritus.

THUCYDIDES. The Peloponnesian War. Trans., with Notes, by Rev. H. Dale. Portrait. 2 vols. *3s. 6d.* each.

TYRTÆUS.—*See Theocritus.*

VIRGIL. The Works of. In Prose, with Notes by Davidson. Revised, with additional Notes and Biographical Notice, by T. A. Buckley, B.A. Portrait. *3s. 6d.*

XENOPHON'S Works. Trans., with Notes, by J. S. Watson, M.A., and others. Portrait. In 3 vols.

COLLEGIATE SERIES.

10 *Vols. at* 5*s. each.* (2*l.* 10*s. per set.*)

DANTE. The Inferno. Prose Trans., with the Text of the Original on the same page, and Explanatory Notes, by John A. Carlyle, M.D. Portrait. *N. S.*

—— **The Purgatorio.** Prose Trans., with the Original on the same page, and Explanatory Notes, by W. S. Dugdale. *N. S.*

NEW TESTAMENT (The) in Greek. Griesbach's Text, with the Readings of Mill and Scholz at the foot of the page, and Parallel References in the margin. Also a Critical Introduction and Chronological Tables. Two Fac-similes of Greek Manuscripts. 650 pages. 3*s.* 6*d.*

—— or bound up with a Greek and English Lexicon to the New Testament (250 pages additional, making in all 900). 5*s.*

The Lexicon may be had separately, price 2*s.*

DOBREE'S Adversaria. (Notes on the Greek and Latin Classics.) Edited by the late Prof. Wagner. 2 vols.

DONALDSON (Dr.) The Theatre of the Greeks. With Supplementary Treatise on the Language, Metres, and Prosody of the Greek Dramatists. Numerous Illustrations and 3 Plans. By J. W. Donaldson, D.D. *N. S.*

KEIGHTLEY'S (Thomas) Mythology of Ancient Greece and Italy. Revised by Leonhard Schmitz, Ph.D., LL.D. 12 Plates. *N. S.*

HERODOTUS, Notes on. Original and Selected from the best Commentators. By D. W. Turner, M.A. Coloured Map.

—— **Analysis and Summary of,** with a Synchronistical Table of Events—Tables of Weights, Measures, Money, and Distances—an Outline of the History and Geography—and the Dates completed from Gaisford, Baehr, &c. By J. T. Wheeler.

THUCYDIDES. An Analysis and Summary of. With Chronological Table of Events, &c., by J. T. Wheeler.

SCIENTIFIC LIBRARY.

57 *Vols. at* 5*s. each, excepting those marked otherwise.* (15*l.* 2*s. per set.*)

AGASSIZ and GOULD. Outline of Comparative Physiology touching the Structure and Development of the Races of Animals living and extinct. For Schools and Colleges. Enlarged by Dr. Wright. With Index and 300 Illustrative Woodcuts.

BOLLEY'S Manual of Technical Analysis; a Guide for the Testing and Valuation of the various Natural and Artificial Substances employed in the Arts and Domestic Economy, founded on the work of Dr. Bolley. Edit. by Dr. Paul. 100 Woodcuts.

BRIDGEWATER TREATISES.

—— **Bell (Sir Charles) on the Hand;** its Mechanism and Vital Endowments, as evincing Design. Preceded by an Account of the Author's Discoveries in the Nervous System by A. Shaw. Numerous Woodcuts.

—— **Kirby on the History, Habits,** and Instincts of Animals. With Notes by T. Rymer Jones. 100 Woodcuts. 2 vols.

—— **Kidd on the Adaptation of Ex**ternal Nature to the Physical Condition of Man, principally with reference to the Supply of his Wants and the Exercises of his Intellectual Faculties. 3*s.* 6*d.*

BRIDGEWATER TREATISES.—*Continued.*

—— **Whewell's Astronomy and** General Physics, considered with reference to Natural Theology. Portrait of the Earl of Bridgewater. 3*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Chalmers on the Adaptation of** External Nature to the Moral and Intellectual Constitution of Man. With Memoir by Rev. Dr. Cumming. Portrait.

—— **Prout's Treatise on Chemistry,** Meteorology, and the Function of Digestion, with reference to Natural Theology. Edit. by Dr. J. W. Griffith. 2 Maps.

—— **Buckland's Geology and Miner**alogy. With Additions by Prof. Owen, Prof. Phillips, and R. Brown. Memoir of Buckland. Portrait. 2 vols. 15*s.* Vol. I. Text. Vol. II. 90 large plates with letterpress.

—— **Roget's Animal and Vegetable** Physiology. 463 Woodcuts. 2 vols. 6*s.* each.

BROWNE. Manual of Geology. By A. J. Jukes Browne. With numerous Diagrams and Illustrations, 6*s.*

CARPENTER'S (Dr. W. B.) Zoology. A Systematic View of the Structure, Habits, Instincts, and Uses of the principal Families of the Animal Kingdom, and of the chief Forms of Fossil Remains. Revised by W. S. Dallas, F.L.S. Numerous Woodcuts. 2 vols. *6s.* each.

—— **Mechanical Philosophy, Astronomy, and Horology.** A Popular Exposition. 181 Woodcuts.

—— **Vegetable Physiology and Systematic Botany.** A complete Introduction to the Knowledge of Plants. Revised by E. Lankester, M.D., &c. Numerous Woodcuts. *6s.*

—— **Animal Physiology.** Revised Edition. 300 Woodcuts. *6s.*

CHEVREUL on Colour. Containing the Principles of Harmony and Contrast of Colours, and their Application to the Arts; including Painting, Decoration, Tapestries, Carpets, Mosaics, Glazing, Staining, Calico Printing, Letterpress Printing, Map Colouring, Dress, Landscape and Flower Gardening, &c. Trans. by C. Martel. Several Plates.

—— With an additional series of 16 Plates in Colours, *7s. 6d.*

ENNEMOSER'S History of Magic. Trans. by W. Howitt. With an Appendix of the most remarkable and best authenticated Stories of Apparitions, Dreams, Second Sight, Table-Turning, and Spirit-Rapping, &c. 2 vols.

HIND'S Introduction to Astronomy. With Vocabulary of the Terms in present use. Numerous Woodcuts. *3s. 6d. N.S.*

HOGG'S (Jabez) Elements of Experimental and Natural Philosophy. Being an Easy Introduction to the Study of Mechanics, Pneumatics, Hydrostatics, Hydraulics, Acoustics, Optics, Caloric, Electricity, Voltaism, and Magnetism. 400 Woodcuts.

HUMBOLDT'S Cosmos; or, Sketch of a Physical Description of the Universe. Trans. by E. C. Otté, B. H. Paul, and W. S. Dallas, F.L.S. Portrait. 5 vols. *3s. 6d.* each, excepting vol. v., *5s.*

—— **Personal Narrative of his Travels** in America during the years 1799–1804. Trans., with Notes, by T. Ross. 3 vols.

—— **Views of Nature; or, Contemplations of the Sublime Phenomena of** Creation, with Scientific Illustrations. Trans. by E. C. Otté.

HUNT'S (Robert) Poetry of Science; or, Studies of the Physical Phenomena of Nature. By Robert Hunt, Professor at the School of Mines.

JOYCE'S Scientific Dialogues. A Familiar Introduction to the Arts and Sciences. For Schools and Young People. Numerous Woodcuts.

—— **Introduction to the Arts and** Sciences, for Schools and Young People. Divided into Lessons with Examination Questions. Woodcuts. *3s. 6d.*

JUKES-BROWNE'S Student's Handbook of Physical Geology. By A. J. Jukes-Browne, of the Geological Survey of England. With numerous Diagrams and Illustrations, *6s. N.S.*

KNIGHT'S (Charles) Knowledge is Power. A Popular Manual of Political Economy.

LECTURES ON PAINTING by the Royal Academicians, Barry, Opie, Fuseli. With Introductory Essay and Notes by R. Wornum. Portrait of Fuseli.

LILLY. Introduction to Astrology. With a Grammar of Astrology and Tables for calculating Nativities, by Zadkiel.

MANTELL'S (Dr.) Geological Excursions through the Isle of Wight and along the Dorset Coast. Numerous Woodcuts and Geological Map.

—— **Medals of Creation; or, First** Lessons in Geology: including Geological Excursions. Coloured Plates and several hundred Woodcuts. 2 vols. *7s. 6d.* each.

—— **Petrifactions and their Teachings.** Handbook to the Organic Remains in the British Museum. Numerous Woodcuts. *6s.*

—— **Wonders of Geology; or, a** Familiar Exposition of Geological Phenomena. A coloured Geological Map of England, Plates, and 200 Woodcuts. 2 vols. *7s. 6d.* each.

MORPHY'S Games of Chess, being the Matches and best Games played by the American Champion, with explanatory and analytical Notes by J. Löwenthal. With short Memoir and Portrait of Morphy.

SCHOUW'S Earth, Plants, and Man. Popular Pictures of Nature. And Kobell's Sketches from the Mineral Kingdom. Trans. by A. Henfrey, F.R.S. Coloured Map of the Geography of Plants.

SMITH'S (Pye) Geology and Scripture; or, the Relation between the Scriptures and Geological Science. With Memoir.

STANLEY'S Classified Synopsis of the Principal Painters of the Dutch and Flemish Schools, including an Account of some of the early German Masters. By George Stanley.

STAUNTON'S Chess-Player's Handbook. A Popular and Scientific Introduction to the Game, with numerous Diagrams and Coloured Frontispiece. *N.S.*

STAUNTON.—*Continued.*

—— **Chess Praxis.** A Supplement to the Chess-player's Handbook. Containing the most important modern Improvements in the Openings; Code of Chess Laws; and a Selection of Morphy's Games. Annotated. 636 pages. Diagrams. *6s.*

—— **Chess-Player's Companion.** Comprising a Treatise on Odds, Collection of Match Games, including the French Match with M. St. Amant, and a Selection of Original Problems. Diagrams and Coloured Frontispiece.

—— **Chess Tournament of 1851.** A Collection of Games played at this celebrated assemblage. With Introduction and Notes. Numerous Diagrams.

STOCKHARDT'S Experimental Chemistry. A Handbook for the Study of the Science by simple Experiments. Edit. by C. W. Heaton, F.C.S. Numerous Woodcuts. *N. S.*

URE'S (Dr. A.) Cotton Manufacture of Great Britain, systematically investigated; with an Introductory View of its Comparative State in Foreign Countries. Revised by P. L. Simmonds. 150 Illustrations. 2 vols.

—— **Philosophy of Manufactures,** or an Exposition of the Scientific, Moral, and Commercial Economy of the Factory System of Great Britain. Revised by P. L. Simmonds. Numerous Figures. 800 pages. *7s. 6d.*

ECONOMICS AND FINANCE.

GILBART'S History, Principles, and Practice of Banking. Revised to 1881 by A. S. Michie, of the Royal Bank of Scotland. Portrait of Gilbart. 2 vols. *10s. N. S.*

REFERENCE LIBRARY.

27 *Volumes at Various Prices.* (*8l. 4s. per set.*)

BOHN'S Dictionary of Poetical Quotations. Fourth Edition. *6s.*

BUCHANAN'S Dictionary of Science and Technical Terms used in Philosophy, Literature, Professions, Commerce, Arts, and Trades. By W. H. Buchanan, with Supplement. Edited by Jas. A. Smith. *6s.*

BLAIR'S Chronological Tables. Comprehending the Chronology and History of the World, from the Earliest Times to the Russian Treaty of Peace, April 1856. By J. W. Rosse. 800 pages. *10s.*

—— **Index of Dates.** Comprehending the principal Facts in the Chronology and History of the World, from the Earliest to the Present, alphabetically arranged; being a complete Index to the foregoing. By J. W. Rosse. 2 vols. *5s.* each.

BOHN'S Dictionary of Quotations from the English Poets. 4th and cheaper Edition. *6s.*

BUCHANAN'S Dictionary of Science and Technical Terms. With Supplement. 820 pp. *6s.*

CLARK'S (Hugh) Introduction to Heraldry. Revised by J. R. Planché. *5s.* 950 Illustrations.

—— *With the Illustrations coloured, 15s. N. S.*

CHRONICLES OF THE TOMBS. A Select Collection of Epitaphs, with Essay on Epitaphs and Observations on Sepulchral Antiquities. By T. J. Pettigrew, F.R.S., F.S.A. *5s.*

COINS, Manual of.—*See Humphreys.*

DATES, Index of.—*See Blair.*

DICTIONARY of Obsolete and Provincial English. Containing Words from English Writers previous to the 19th Century. By Thomas Wright, M.A., F.S.A., &c. 2 vols. *5s.* each.

EPIGRAMMATISTS (The). A Selection from the Epigrammatic Literature of Ancient, Mediæval, and Modern Times. With Introduction, Notes, Observations, Illustrations, an Appendix on Works connected with Epigrammatic Literature, by Rev. H. Dodd, M.A. *6s. N. S.*

GAMES, Handbook of. Comprising Treatises on above 40 Games of Chance, Skill, and Manual Dexterity, including Whist, Billiards, &c. Edit. by Henry G. Bohn. Numerous Diagrams. *5s. N. S.*

HUMPHREYS' Coin Collectors' Manual. An Historical Account of the Progress of Coinage from the Earliest Time, by H. N. Humphreys. 140 Illustrations. 2 vols. *5s.* each. *N. S.*

LOWNDES' Bibliographer's Manual of English Literature. Containing an Account of Rare and Curious Books published in or relating to Great Britain and Ireland, from the Invention of Printing, with Biographical Notices and Prices, by W. T. Lowndes. Parts I.–X. (A to Z), 3*s.* 6*d.* each. Part XI. (Appendix Vol.), 5*s.* Or the 11 parts in 4 vols., half morocco, 2*l.* 2*s.*

MEDICINE, Handbook of Domestic, Popularly Arranged. By Dr. H. Davies. 700 pages. 5*s.*

NOTED NAMES OF FICTION. Dictionary of. Including also Familiar Pseudonyms, Surnames bestowed on Eminent Men, &c. By W. A. Wheeler, M.A. 5*s.* *N. S.*

POLITICAL CYCLOPÆDIA. A Dictionary of Political, Constitutional, Statistical, and Forensic Knowledge; forming a Work of Reference on subjects of Civil Administration, Political Economy, Finance, Commerce, Laws, and Social Relations. 4 vols. 3*s.* 6*d.* each.

PROVERBS, Handbook of. Containing an entire Republication of Ray's Collection, with Additions from Foreign Languages and Sayings, Sentences, Maxims, and Phrases, collected by H. G. Bohn. 5*s.*

—— **A Polyglot of Foreign.** Comprising French, Italian, German, Dutch, Spanish, Portuguese, and Danish. With English Translations. 5*s.*

SYNONYMS and ANTONYMS; or, Kindred Words and their Opposites, Collected and Contrasted by Ven. C. J. Smith, M.A. 5*s.* *N. S.*

WRIGHT (Th.)—*See Dictionary.*

NOVELISTS' LIBRARY.

10 *Volumes at* 3*s.* 6*d. each, excepting those marked otherwise.* (1*l.* 18*s. per set.*)

BURNEY'S Evelina; or, a Young Lady's Entrance into the World. By F. Burney (Mme. D'Arblay). With Introduction and Notes by A. R. Ellis, Author of 'Sylvestra,' &c. *N. S.*

—— **Cecilia.** With Introduction and Notes by A. R. Ellis. 2 vols. *N. S.*

FIELDING'S Joseph Andrews and his Friend Mr. Abraham Adams. With Roscoe's Biography. *Cruikshank's Illustrations. N. S.*

—— **History of Tom Jones, a Foundling.** Roscoe's Edition. *Cruikshank's Illustrations.* 2 vols. *N. S.*

FIELDING.—*Continued.*

—— **Amelia.** Roscoe's Edition, revised. *Cruikshank's Illustrations.* 5*s.* *N. S.*

GROSSI'S Marco Visconti. Trans. by A. F. D. *N. S.*

MANZONI. The Betrothed: being a Translation of 'I Promessi Sposi.' Numerous Woodcuts. 1 vol. (732 pages), 5*s.* *N. S.*

STOWE (Mrs. H. B.) Uncle Tom's Cabin; or, Life among the Lowly. 8 full-page Illustrations. *N. S.*

ARTISTS' LIBRARY.

5 *Volumes at Various Prices.* (1*l.* 8*s.* 6*d. per set.*)

BELL (Sir Charles). The Anatomy and Philosophy of Expression, as Connected with the Fine Arts. 5*s.* *N. S.*

DEMMIN. History of Arms and Armour from the Earliest Period. By Auguste Demmin. Trans. by C. C. Black, M.A., Assistant Keeper, S. K. Museum. 1900 Illustrations. 7*s.* 6*d.* *N. S.*

FLAXMAN. Lectures on Sculpture. With Three Addresses to the R.A. by Sir R. Westmacott, R.A., and Memoir of Flaxman. Portrait and 53 Plates. 6*s.* *N.S.*

LEONARDO DA VINCI'S Treatise on Painting. Trans. by J. F. Rigaud, R.A. With a Life and an Account of his Works by J. W. Brown. Numerous Plates. 5*s.* *N. S.*

PLANCHÉ'S History of British Costume, from the Earliest Time to the 19th Century. By J. R. Planché. 400 Illustrations. 5*s.* *N. S.*

BOHN'S CHEAP SERIES.

PRICE ONE SHILLING EACH.

A Series of Complete Stories or Essays, mostly reprinted from Vols. in Bohn's Libraries, and neatly bound in stiff paper cover, with cut edges, suitable for Railway Reading.

ASCHAM (*ROGER*).—

SCHOLEMASTER. By PROFESSOR MAYOR.

CARPENTER (*DR. W. B.*).—

PHYSIOLOGY OF TEMPERANCE AND TOTAL ABSTINENCE.

EMERSON.—

ENGLAND AND ENGLISH CHARACTERISTICS. Lectures on the Race, Ability, Manners, Truth, Character, Wealth, Religion, &c. &c.

NATURE: An Essay. To which are added Orations, Lectures, and Addresses.

REPRESENTATIVE MEN: Seven Lectures on PLATO, SWEDENBORG, MONTAIGNE, SHAKESPEARE, NAPOLEON, and GOETHE.

TWENTY ESSAYS on Various Subjects.

THE CONDUCT OF LIFE.

FRANKLIN (*BENJAMIN*).—

AUTOBIOGRAPHY. Edited by J. SPARKS.

HAWTHORNE (*NATHANIEL*).—

TWICE-TOLD TALES. Two Vols. in One.

SNOW IMAGE, and other Tales.

SCARLET LETTER.

HOUSE WITH THE SEVEN GABLES.

TRANSFORMATION; or the Marble Fawn. Two Parts.

HAZLITT (*W.*).—

TABLE-TALK: Essays on Men and Manners. Three Parts.

PLAIN SPEAKER: Opinions on Books, Men, and Things. Three Parts.

LECTURES ON THE ENGLISH COMIC WRITERS.

LECTURES ON THE ENGLISH POETS.

HAZLITT (*W.*).—*Continued.*

LECTURES ON THE CHARACTERS OF SHAKESPEARE'S PLAYS.

LECTURES ON THE LITERATURE OF THE AGE OF ELIZABETH, chiefly Dramatic.

IRVING (*WASHINGTON*).—

LIFE OF MOHAMMED. With Portrait.

LIVES OF SUCCESSORS OF MOHAMMED.

LIFE OF GOLDSMITH.

SKETCH-BOOK.

TALES OF A TRAVELLER.

TOUR ON THE PRAIRIES.

CONQUESTS OF GRANADA AND SPAIN. Two Parts.

LIFE AND VOYAGES OF COLUMBUS. Two Parts.

COMPANIONS OF COLUMBUS: Their Voyages and Discoveries.

ADVENTURES OF CAPTAIN BONNEVILLE in the Rocky Mountains and the Far West.

KNICKERBOCKER'S HISTORY OF NEW YORK, from the Beginning of the World to the End of the Dutch Dynasty.

TALES OF THE ALHAMBRA.

CONQUEST OF FLORIDA UNDER HERNANDO DE SOTO.

ABBOTSFORD AND NEWSTEAD ABBEY.

SALMAGUNDI; or, The Whim-Whams and Opinions of LAUNCELOT LANGSTAFF, Esq.

BRACEBRIDGE HALL; or, The Humourists.

ASTORIA; or, Anecdotes of an Enterprise beyond the Rocky Mountains.

WOLFERT'S ROOST, and Other Tsles.

LAMB (*CHARLES*).—

ESSAYS OF ELIA. With a Portrait.

LAST ESSAYS OF ELIA.

ELIANA. With Biographical Sketch.

MARRYAT (*CAPTAIN*).

PIRATE AND THE THREE CUTTERS. With a Memoir of the Author.

The only authorised Edition; no others published in England contain the Derivations and Etymological Notes of Dr. Mahn, who devoted several years to this portion of the Work.

WEBSTER'S DICTIONARY

OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

Thoroughly revised and improved by CHAUNCEY A. GOODRICH, D.D., LL.D., and NOAH PORTER, D.D., of Yale College.

THE GUINEA DICTIONARY.

New Edition [1880], with a Supplement of upwards of 4600 New Words and Meanings.

1628 Pages. 3000 Illustrations.

The features of this volume, which render it perhaps the most useful Dictionary for general reference extant, as it is undoubtedly one of the cheapest books ever published, are as follows :—

1. COMPLETENESS.—It contains 114,000 words—more by 10,000 than any other Dictionary; and these are, for the most part, unusual or technical terms, for the explanation of which a Dictionary is most wanted.
2. ACCURACY OF DEFINITION.—In the present edition all the definitions have been carefully and methodically analysed by W. G. Webster, the Rev. C. Goodrich. Prof. Lyman, Prof. Whitney, and Prof. Gilman, under the superintendence of Prof. Goodrich.
3. SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL TERMS.—In order to secure the utmost completeness and accuracy of definition, this department has been subdivided among eminent scholars and experts, including Prof. Dana, Prof. Lyman, &c.
4. ETYMOLOGY.—The eminent philologist, Dr. C. F. Mahn, has devoted five years to completing this department.
5. THE ORTHOGRAPHY is based, as far as possible, on Fixed Principles. *In all cases of doubt an alternative spelling is given.*
6. PRONUNCIATION.—This has been entrusted to Mr. W. G. Webster and Mr. Wheeler, assisted by other scholars. The pronunciation of each word is indicated by typographical signs *printed at the bottom of each page.*
7. THE ILLUSTRATIVE CITATIONS.—No labour has been spared to embody such quotations from standard authors as may throw light on the definitions, or possess any special interest of thought or language.
8. THE SYNONYMS.—These are subjoined to the words to which they belong, and are very complete.
9. THE ILLUSTRATIONS, which exceed 3000, are inserted, not for the sake of ornament, but to elucidate the meaning of words.

Cloth, 21*s.*; half-bound in calf, 30*s.*; calf or half russia, 31*s.* 6*d.*; russia, 2*l.*

To be obtained through all Booksellers.

WEBSTER'S DICTIONARY.

'SEVENTY years passed before Johnson was followed by Webster, an American writer, who faced the task of the English Dictionary with a full appreciation of its requirements, leading to better practical results.' . . .

'His laborious comparison of twenty languages, though never published, bore fruit in his own mind, and his training placed him both in knowledge and judgment far in advance of Johnson as a philologist. Webster's *American Dictionary of the English Language* was published in 1828, and of course appeared at once in England, where successive re-editing *has yet kept it in the highest place as a practical Dictionary.*'

'The acceptance of an American Dictionary in England has itself had immense effect in keeping up the community of speech, to break which would be a grievous harm, not to English-speaking nations alone, but to mankind. The result of this has been that the common Dictionary must suit both sides of the Atlantic.' . . .

'The good average business-like character of Webster's Dictionary, both in style and matter, made it as distinctly suited as Johnson's was distinctly unsuited to be expanded and re-edited by other hands. Professor Goodrich's edition of 1847 is not much more than enlarged and amended; but other revisions since have so much novelty of plan as to be described as distinct works.' . . .

'The American revised Webster's Dictionary of 1864, published in America and England, is of an altogether higher order than these last [The London Imperial and Student's]. It bears on its title-page the names of Drs. Goodrich and Porter, but inasmuch as its especial improvement is in the etymological department, the care of which was committed to Dr. Mahn of Berlin, we prefer to describe it in short as the Webster-Mahn Dictionary. Many other literary men, among them Professors Whitney and Dana, aided in the task of compilation and revision. On consideration it seems that the editors and contributors have gone far toward improving Webster to the utmost that he will bear improvement. The *vocabulary has become almost complete as regards usual words, while the definitions keep throughout to Webster's simple careful style, and the derivations are assigned with the aid of good modern authorities.*'

'On the whole, the Webster-Mahn Dictionary as it stands is most respectable, and **certainly the best Practical English Dictionary extant.**'—From the *Quarterly Review*, Oct. 1873.

LONDON: G. BELL & SONS, YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN.

New Edition, with a New Biographical Supplement of upwards of 900 Names.

WEBSTER'S COMPLETE DICTIONARY
AND BOOK OF LITERARY REFERENCE.

1919 Pages. 3000 Illustrations.

Besides the matter comprised in the WEBSTER'S GUINEA DICTIONARY, this volume contains the following Appendices, which will show that no pains have been spared to make it a complete Literary Reference-book :—

A BRIEF HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. By Prof. James Hadley.

PRINCIPLES OF PRONUNCIATION. By Prof. Goodrich and W. A. Wheeler, M.A, Including a Synopsis of Words differently pronounced by different authorities.

A SHORT TREATISE ON ORTHOGRAPHY. By A. W. Wright. Including a complete List of Words that are spelt in two or more ways.

VOCABULARY OF NOTED NAMES OF FICTION. By W. A. Wheeler, M.A. This work includes Mythical Names ; including also Pseudonyms, Nick-names of eminent persons and parties, &c. &c.

This work may also be had separately, post 8vo. price 5s.

A PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY OF SCRIPTURE PROPER NAMES. By W. A. Wheeler. M.A.

A PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY OF GREEK AND LATIN PROPER NAMES. By Prof. Thacher.

AN ETYMOLOGICAL VOCABULARY OF MODERN GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES. By the Rev. C. H. Wheeler.

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARIES OF MODERN GEOGRAPHICAL AND BIOGRAPHICAL NAMES. By J. Thomas, M.D.

A PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY OF COMMON ENGLISH CHRISTIAN NAMES, with their derivations, signification, &c.

A DICTIONARY OF QUOTATIONS. Containing all Words, Phrases, Proverbs, and Colloquial Expressions from the Greek, Latin, and Modern Languages met with in literature.

A NEW BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY OF UPWARDS OF 9700 NAMES OF NOTED PERSONS, ANCIENT AND MODERN.

A LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS, CONTRACTIONS, AND ARBITRARY SIGNS USED IN WRITING AND PRINTING.

A CLASSIFIED SELECTION OF PICTORIAL ILLUSTRATIONS (70 pages). With references to the text.

'The cheapest Dictionary ever published, as it is confessedly one of the best. The introduction of small woodcut illustrations of technical and scientific terms adds greatly to the utility of the Dictionary.'—*Churchman.*

1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.* ; half-calf, 2*l.* ; calf or half-russia, 2*l.* 2*s.* ; russia, 2*l.* 10*s.*

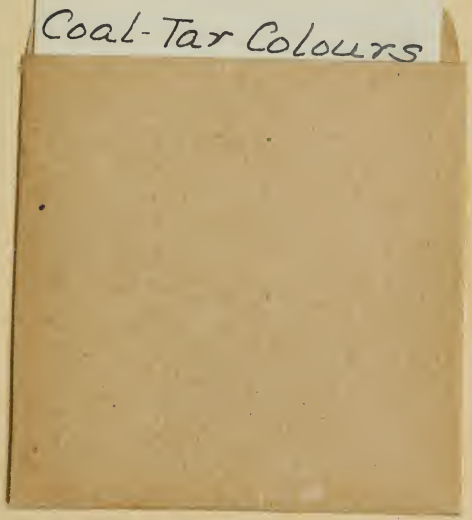
LONDON :
Printed by STRANGEWAYS AND SONS, Tower Street, Upper St. Martin's Lane.

87-BH372

Date Due

1-25-36			

667.2 B433
6215
Coal-Tar Colours



GETTY CENTER LIBRARY
3 3125 00140 2342